

Colloquial Basque

**A Complete Language
Course**

**Alan R. King and
Begotxu Olaizola Elordi**



London and New York

First published 1996
by Routledge
11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada
by Routledge
29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001

Routledge is an International Thomson Publishing company

© 1996 Alan R. King and Begotxu Olaizola Elordi

Typeset in Times Ten by Florencetype Ltd, Stoodleigh, Devon

Printed and bound in England by Clays Ltd, St Ives PLC

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data

King, Alan R. (Alan Roy), 1954—

Colloquial Basque: a complete language course/Alan R. King and
Begotxu Olaizola Elordi.
(The colloquial series)

Includes index.

1. Basque language — Textbooks for foreign speakers — English.

I. Olaizola Elordi, Begotxu, 1964— . II. Title.

PH5035.K57 1996

499'.9282421 — dc20

95-34867

ISBN 0-415-12109-4 (book)

ISBN 0-415-12110-8 (cassettes)

ISBN 0-415-12111-6 (book and cassettes course)

Colloquial

Basque

Contents

Map of the Basque Country	vii
Introduction	1
1 Bidean	7
En route	
2 Kafetxo bat?	23
Cup of coffee?	
3 Irutsi zara!	40
You've arrived!	
4 Herria ikusten	55
Seeing the town	
5 Etxean	70
At home	
6 Goazen buelta bat ematera!	86
Let's go out!	
7 Erosketak (1)	101
Shopping (1)	
8 Erosketak (2)	120
Shopping (2)	
9 Asteburua	132
The weekend	
10 Bidaia prestatzen	153
Travel preparations	

11 'Hortik zehar'	167
On the road	
12 Etxerantz	182
Going home	
Appendix	201
Key to exercises	210
Basque–English vocabulary	222
English–Basque vocabulary	237
Subject index	243

The Colloquial Series

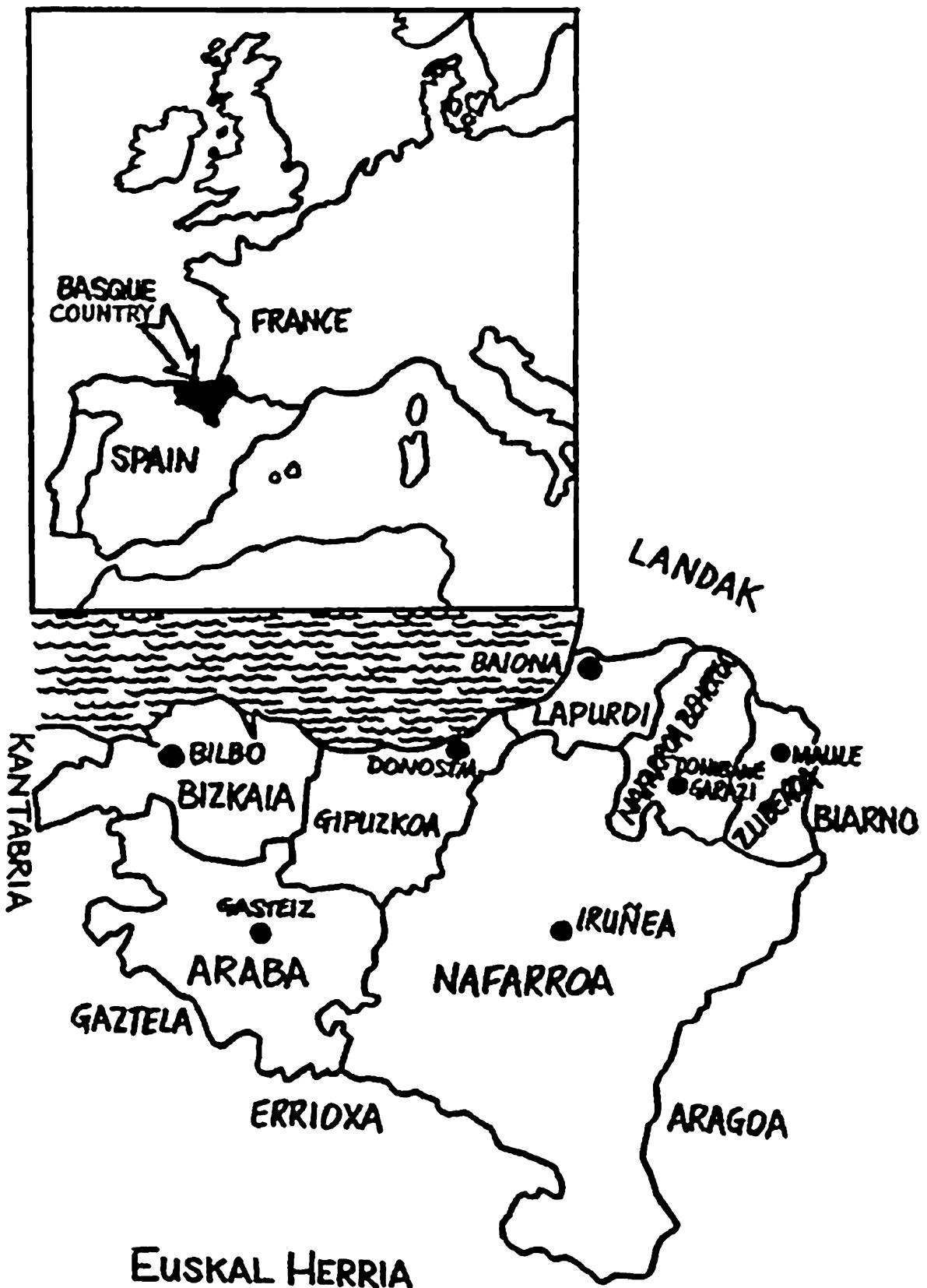
The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

Albanian	Italian
Amharic	Japanese
Arabic (Levantine)	Korean
Arabic of Egypt	Malay
Arabic of the Gulf and Saudi Arabia	Norwegian
Basque	Punjabi
Bulgarian	Persian
Cambodian	Polish
Cantonese	Portuguese
Chinese	Romanian
Czech	* Russian
Danish	Serbo-Croat
Dutch	Slovene
English	Somali
Estonian	* Spanish
French	Spanish of Latin America
German	Swedish
* Greek	Thai
Gujarati	Turkish
Hindi	Ukrainian
Hungarian	Vietnamese
Indonesian	Welsh

Accompanying cassette(s) are available for the above titles.

*** Accompanying CDs are also available.**

The Basque Country



Introduction

The Basque language today

As one of Europe's most exotic minority languages, probably unrelated genetically to any other language in the world, Basque has long fascinated linguists and non-specialists alike. According to our present knowledge, assuming that the Indo-European languages ultimately originated from outside Europe, Basque is the only truly indigenous European tongue to survive today, the remnant of a bygone age.

Basque is spoken by two-thirds of a million people who constitute almost 20 per cent of the Basque Country's present population of three-and-a-half million. The proportion was much higher in the past, the sharpest drop having occurred in the last hundred years or so. While this may sound discouraging, there is an extensive band covering much of the northern half of the country, including most of the coastal and highland regions, where Basque, though endangered, is still the native language for most of the local population. Thanks to a recent upsurge in its political, social and economic status, even in the non-Basque-speaking regions you can now find people proud to speak what they firmly regard as their national language.

For long, official Spanish policy was highly unsympathetic to Basque. The language, forced into a kind of underground existence during the Franco years (1939–75), was forbidden in schools and public places and banned from official services and the media. According to state propaganda at the time, it was unpatriotic to speak it, and even those who continued to use Basque in private lived in real fear of being arrested or otherwise punished. Despite these adverse circumstances, a significant proportion of Basque families remained loyal to their ancestral tongue and helped to keep it alive.

After the end of the dictatorial régime, the new Spanish Constitution granted to the regions some degree of self-rule, known as 'autonomy'. Under the democratic régime, three 'Spanish' provinces of the Basque Country (Araba, Bizkaia and Gipuzkoa) constituted the Autonomous Community of the Basque Country, also known as Euskadi; a fourth province (the largest) has a separate administration as the Autonomous Community of Navarre. Since the early 1980s these communities have had elected 'autonomous governments' exercising whatever powers Madrid has 'transferred' as a result of political negotiations. Powers transferred to the **Eusko Jaurlaritza** (the government of the **Euskadiko Autonomi Elkartea**, seated in Vitoria/Gasteiz) include internal revenue, administration of schools, mass media, health services and the **Ertzaintza**, or Basque police force. The status of the Basque language in this area has improved progressively during recent decades, thanks to widespread popular sentiment, grass-roots campaigning (once clandestine and now legal) and the **Eusko Jaurlaritza's** official language policies, although the latter are subject to oscillations depending on wavering political factors. Roughly comparable conditions exist in the Navarrese autonomous community, polarized between the north, largely Basque-speaking and pro-Basque, and the south, whose Basque tradition is weak.

These four provinces are referred to collectively as **Hegoaldea** ('the South') as opposed to **Iparraldea** ('the North'), comprising the three small provinces of the 'French' Basque Country: Lapurdi, Low Navarre and Zuberoa. This region has no self-rule in the French state, despite campaigns to achieve at least a limited degree of autonomy. Apart from the urbanized Bayonne–Biarritz area, most of the rural 'North' conserves a strong Basque tradition and flavour, notwithstanding heavy French influence among the younger generation.

Varieties of Basque

Spoken Basque has a number of dialects that are mutually intelligible in normal circumstances and may be thought of as belonging to three rough types that merge into each other: western (Bizkaian), central (e.g. Lapurdian or High Navarrese) and eastern (c.g. Zuberoan). Probably the most widely known dialect today is Gipuzkoan, which straddles the western and central types.

The first Basque books were published in the sixteenth century. The language possesses no very imposing literary history, and the standardized writing system that now exists, known as **Euskara Batua** (Unified Basque), is a product of recent years still subject to occasional re-adjustments. The media and the schools have contributed to the progressive consolidation of a spoken version of the standard which has distanced itself somewhat from colloquial speech. While most native speakers today are familiar with what we might call 'television Basque', they do not really speak it.

Faithful to the title, conversations in this book present a compromise between this slightly stilted modern spoken standard and the colloquial Basque that ordinary people actually speak and the learner is likely to hear. It was decided that in a manual of this scope it was better not to burden the reader with information about dialectal alternatives, so a single model of spoken Basque is provided which will serve most communicative purposes: an approximation to contemporary informal Gipuzkoan speech, omitting the inevitable localisms and vulgarisms that an excess of realism would have implied but which a normal learner would not be expected to reproduce. Language variation is none the less reflected by the occasional speaker of a different dialect in the dialogues (eastern in Unit 11; Bizkaian in Unit 12), and some non-conversational texts: a weather report, a song, informal letters and postcards, public signs, a menu and the occasional written text.

Using the book

Colloquial Basque is a complete introductory course consisting of twelve units. Each unit contains a wealth of study material, and most are subdivided into three sections or lessons. You may find it best to incorporate periodic revision cycles into the study programme, and possibly to skip over certain items according to your interests, at least the first time round. Although such flexibility is intended, it should also be borne in mind that the units as presented form a graded progression.

Each unit section opens with a text, usually a conversation. Many of these are set in an attractive coastal resort town, Zarautz. Here lives Naroa, a Basque school teacher, whose guest is Elin, a Welsh friend who has come to spend the summer holidays. Through them, as they go about their daily chores and engage in various leisure activities, you will experience different aspects of everyday life,

culture and language. The conversations, simulating real communication while gradually introducing essential aspects of the language's use and structure, will expose you to an assortment of interactive situations in different settings and models for a range of commonplace communicative transactions.

Each text is followed by a vocabulary list or notes. Analyse the text with this help until its meaning becomes clear to you. This 'deciphering' stage is an important part of the learning process. When you understand at least the gist of the text, move on to the following explanatory materials, which clarify and develop many aspects of the language. Simple exercises, interspersed among the explanations, can be worked through in a matter of minutes or seconds and checked in the key at the end of the book. *After working through explanations and exercises, go back and reread the conversation or text, perhaps several times, until you understand everything.*

The explanations are grouped as follows:

Grammatical nuts and bolts. Only those features of Basque grammar most essential for communication are dwelt on, and these are presented through examples accompanied by the simplest of explanations.

Saying what you mean. In communicating one needs to refer to certain fundamental notions time and time again, such as identity (saying which), place (saying where), time (saying when), reason (saying why), manner (saying how) and so on. The most useful ways of expressing these in Basque are brought together under this heading.

Doing things with words. Communication also involves expressing or establishing what you would like someone to do, what you yourself want to do, or what your attitude to or feeling about something is: invitations, getting permission, making plans, indicating preferences, expressing surprise, etc. You will learn how to perform such communicative acts.

Strategies for communication. By combining the above skills you will be able to communicate in Basque, but it also helps to have an overall strategy or routine for certain common situations, such as ordering in a restaurant, asking someone the way, making introductions or saying goodbye. Each language has certain common formulae for use in such situations, and this section will focus on some of them.

Talking about . . . Under this heading you will find information and word lists that allow you to express yourself accurately concerning particular topics that are usually relevant to learners' needs, such as drinks, food, transport, weather, accommodation, shopping and so on. Of course you know your interests better than we do, so you can pick and choose which of these items to concentrate on.

Language and life. Without knowing anything about British culture and lifestyles, how could a foreigner, no matter how good a linguist, understand the true meaning of the English expressions *cuppa, half of bitter, going down to the local, top ten, popular press, King's English, lah-di-dah, high street, home counties, or fish and chips?* Language is inseparable from a country's life and culture. This section provides useful notes about Basque music, towns, media, dialects, eating habits, bars, fiestas and so on, not only interesting in their own right, but necessary for a proper understanding of the real-life colloquial language.

For further study

The Basque Language: a Practical Introduction by A.R. King (University of Nevada Press, Reno, 1994) is a comprehensive course, suitable for either self-study or classroom use, and serious students will still benefit from its use after having worked through *Colloquial Basque*. For those who read French, particularly if interested in the dialects written and spoken north of the Pyrenees, P. Lafitte's now classical *Grammaire Basque* (1944, reprinted by Elkar, Donostia, 1991) remains one of the best Basque grammars available.

The most recommendable dictionaries between English and Basque available are published in Reno by the University of Nevada Press: the large *Basque-English Dictionary* by G. Aulestia (1989) and its companion volume, the *English-Basque Dictionary* by G. Aulestia and L. White (1990); there is also a one-volume paperback *Basque-English English-Basque Dictionary* by Aulestia and White (1992), also distributed in the Basque Country by Elkar under the title *Euskara-Inglesa Inglesa-Euskara Hiztegia* (1992). A growing number of dictionaries into Spanish and in Basque only are available from Basque publishers. R.M. Azkue's *Diccionario Vasco-Español-Francés* (1925), reprinted periodically by Euskaltzaindia, the Basque language academy, and P. Múgica's *Diccionario Castellano-Vasco* (Mensajero, Bilbao, 1964/1987) are classics, but increasingly dated.

Far too many books and publications in Basque are now available for it to be worth trying to give a general reading list. There are good Basque bookshops in all the major Basque cities, so be sure to visit one if you are in the country. You will also find quite a large selection of Basque records, tapes and compact discs (see Unit 6 for more information), and you may be interested in the Basque-language press and media (see Unit 5).

You might also consider attending a summer residential course. Several are organized each year, varying in level, duration and location, particularly in summer.

Information or addresses can be obtained from Mercator, an internationally based European minority-languages project, or HABE, a Basque institution concerned with the teaching of Basque to adults. Their addresses are:

Mercator
Prifysgol Cymru
Aberystwyth SY23 3AS
CYMRU (UK)
Tel.: 01970-622 533
Fax: 01970-622 190
Email: merc@aber.ac.uk

HABE
Vitoria-Gasteiz kalea, 3
20008 Donostia
EUSKADI (Spain)
Tel.: 0034 43-41 26 00
Fax: 0034 43-41 26 01

Acknowledgements

The authors wish to express their thanks to the following: Arantxa Eizmendi, Brendan Morgan, Lyn Lewis Dafis, Itziar Olaizola, Xabier Olaizola, Armentia Ikastola (Gasteiz), Éire Language and Information Services (Zarautz), Zarauzko Turismo Bulegoa, and the Routledge editorial team.

The song ‘Txoria txori’ on p.99 is reproduced by kind permission of Mikel Laboa and J.A. Artze, authors respectively of the music and lyrics.

1 Bidean

En route

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- word order
- asking questions (1)
- omission of the subject

Saying what you mean

- saying which and where
- singular personal pronouns
- 'in', 'on', 'at', 'to' and 'from'

Doing things with words

- being polite

Strategies for communication

- saying where you are from
- saying where you live

Language and life

- Basque towns
- speaking Basque

Dialogue 1

At the Bilbao bus station

Elin addresses a bus driver

ELIN: Barkatu!

DRIVER: Zer?

ELIN: Hau da Donostiako autobusa?

DRIVER: Ez.

ELIN: Non dago, mesedez?

DRIVER (pointing): Hantxe.

ELIN: Eskerrik asko.

(*Elin approaches a young woman waiting at a bus rank.*)

ELIN: Aizu, badakizu euskaraz?

(*The woman just smiles and shakes her head. Elin tries a young man.*)

ELIN: Euskaraz badakizu?

XABIER: Bai!

ELIN: Aizu, Donostiako autobusa hau da?

XABIER: Bai, bai, hauxe da.

ELIN: A!

Vocabulary

a!	oh! I see! right!
aizu!	hey! I say! could you tell me . . . ?
autobusa	a/the bus
badakizu	(do) you know
Badakizu euskaraz?	Can you speak Basque?
bai	yes
barkatu!	excuse me! I beg your pardon! I'm sorry to bother you!
da	is, it is (<i>for saying what something is</i>)
dago	is, it is (<i>for saying where something is</i>)
Donostia	San Sebastian, an important Basque town
Donostiako autobusa	the San Sebastian bus
eskerrik asko	thank you (very much)
euskara	the Basque language
ez	no
han or hantxe	there, over there (a good distance away)
hau or hauxe	this
mesedez	please, if you don't mind
non	where
Xabier	man's name
zer	what

Pronunciation and spelling

In the Gipuzkoan dialect, words have main stress peak most often on the second syllable, thus **autóbusa**, **badákizu**, **barkátu**, **eskérrik askó**, **mesédez**, **euskáldun(a)** ‘Basque’, **hondártza** ‘beach’; but it

may be on the first syllable: **áizu**, **káixo** ‘hello’, **hántxe**, **bízi** ‘live’, **pózik** ‘happy’, **géro** ‘then’. Most words with first-syllable stress are either two-syllable words, as in the preceding examples, or words formed by adding suffixes to a monosyllabic root as in **nóngoa** ‘where from?’ (**non** ‘where?’), **trénean** ‘on the train’ (**tren** ‘train’), **déituко** ‘will call’ (**dei** ‘a call’). With two-syllable roots, the stress may be on the first or second syllable, sometimes even as alternative pronunciations for the same word form, e.g. **hérriko tabérna** or **herriko tabérna** ‘the village bar’ (**herri** ‘village, town’). Bisyllabic roots for which initial stress is obligatory include most roots ending in **a** such as **dénda** ‘shop’, **gélа** ‘room’.

Basque has five vowel sounds, represented by **a**, **e**, **i**, **o** and **u**. These are pronounced roughly as in English *pat*, *pet*, *pit*, *pot* and *put* respectively. They can combine in diphthongs (groups of two vowels): **ai**, **ei**, **oi** are pronounced something like the vowel sounds in English *buy*, *bay*, *boy*; **au** is like that in *house*; **eu**, not a familiar sound in English, is produced by pronouncing **e** and **u** in quick succession.

R is a strongly trilled sound except when a single **r** stands between vowels inside a word, as in **euskaraz**, when it represents a much softer single flap (as in *very* in standard English or the commonplace American pronunciation of *tt* in *kitty*); both sounds are produced by the tip of the tongue against the roof of the mouth. The trilled **r** sound occurs in **eskerrik asko** and **barkatu**. The trilled **r** is never silent in Basque (do not say ‘baakatu’!), although the flap **r** sometimes is silent colloquially (e.g. **gero** is pronounced **geo** by some speakers).

B, **d**, **g**, **p**, **t** and **k** are pronounced less energetically in Basque than in English. **P**, **t** and **k** are not aspirated (i.e. there is no puff of breath following them); between vowels **b**, **d** and **g** are ‘slurred’, and sometimes even silent in colloquial Basque (e.g. **dao** for **dago**).

H is silent except in the North, where it sounds approximately as in English.

S and **z** are both ‘s’ sounds, but differ: **z** is like an emphatic English *s* as in *hiss*, almost but not quite lisped; **s** is a ‘mushier’ sound, almost like English *sh* but not quite. Some Basques fail to differentiate these, so if you don’t it won’t matter. More importantly, remember not to confuse **z** with the English *z*.

X represents the English *sh* sound, as in *push* (except in some borrowings, where it is commonly pronounced like *s*, e.g. **taxi**, pronounced **tasi**). **Tx** represents the English *ch* sound, as in *bunch*.

Exercise 1 Make sure, before going any further, that you know how to pronounce every word in the above vocabulary list.

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Word order; asking questions (1)

Study these sentences:

Hau Donostiako autobusa da.	This is the San Sebastian bus
Donostiako autobusa da hau.	
Hau da Donostiako autobusa.	
Donostiako autobusa hau da.	

Hau Donostiako autobusa da?	Is this the San Sebastian bus?
Donostiako autobusa da hau?	
Hau da Donostiako autobusa?	
Donostiako autobusa hau da?	

In English, a difference in word order (between *This is ...* and *Is this ...*) makes the difference between a statement and a question. In Basque a question can be formed from a statement just by placing a question mark at the end (in writing) or using a different intonation (in speech).

On the other hand, in Basque also, more than one word order is often possible. The resulting sentences are not completely interchangeable, but the subtle differences are rarely reflected by English word order, and so are often difficult to translate. A short guide to Basque word-order rules is given in a special appendix at the end of the book, for the learner to consult at any time.

Exercise 2 Look for examples in the dialogue of the same sentence with alternative word orders, e.g. **Badakizu euskaraz?** or **Euskaraz badakizu?**

As we have just seen, questions asking for a ‘yes’ (*bai*) or ‘no’ (*ez*) answer can be identical to corresponding statements, except for intonation or punctuation. However, some speakers do signal such questions by placing the particle *al* in front of the verb (e.g. *da* or *dago*), as in:

Hau al da Donostiako autobusa?

If *al* is used, falling intonation as in statements must be used.

Omission of the subject

Study these sentences:

Non dago autobusa?	Where is the bus?
Autobusa non dago?	
Non dago?	Where is it?

In English, when we don't mention the subject *the bus*, as in the third sentence, we must insert a pronoun instead: *it*. In Basque, we simply omit the subject in such cases, without any pronoun. 'It' is understood from the context.

Exercise 3 How do you translate these two sentences?

Hau da autobusa.

Hau da.

Exercise 4 (review) Translate into Basque (for word order, follow the numbers in parentheses).

- 1 It's (2) the bus (1).
- 2 What (1) is (2) it?
- 3 Where (1) is (2) it?
- 4 It's (2) over there (1).
- 5 Do you know?
- 6 Yes.
- 7 Is it (3) the San Sebastian (1) bus (2)?
- 8 No.
- 9 Oh!

Saying what you mean

Saying which and where

Study these exchanges:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| A: Hau da Bilboko autobusa? | Is this the Bilbao bus? |
| B: Ez. | No. |
| Bilboko autobusa hori da. | That is the Bilbao bus. |
| Hau Baionako autobusa da. | This is the Bayonne bus. |
| C: Autobusa hemen dago? | Is the bus here? |
| D: Ez, hor dago. | No, it's there. |

There are two ways of saying 'is' (also 'he is', 'she is' or 'it is'): **da** is used when identifying what, who or which one something or someone is; **dago** when saying where something or someone is.

Learn the words that mean 'this' and 'that', and 'here' and 'there'. There are two different words for 'that', and two for 'there'. **Hura** and **han** refer to things and places quite a long way away; **hori** and **hor** to things in the middle distance, or near the person you are speaking to.

	<i>Pronouns</i>	<i>Adverbs</i>
<i>Near speaker</i>	hau 'this'	hemen 'here'
<i>Further away</i>	hori 'that'	hor 'there'
<i>Distant</i>	hura 'that (over there)'	han '(over) there'

In general, use **hau** or **hori** for things in the same room or area as you, and **hura** for things outside the room or area where you are.

Exercise 5 Name several objects around you, using the pattern **Hau/Hori/Hura X da**, e.g. **Hori autobusa da**. In place of X you may use any of the following words:

mahaia	a/the table
aulkia	a/the chair
atea	a/the door
leihoa	a/the window
liburua	a/the book
boligrafoa	a/the ballpen
autobusa	a/the bus
kalea	a/the street

You may also use words that you can find in the general vocabulary at the end of the book. However, you must add **-a** to common nouns unless a word already ends in **-a**; thus, since the vocabulary gives **mendi** 'mountain', you must say: **Hura mendia da** 'That is a (or the) mountain'.

Exercise 6 Make up sentences saying where each of the things is, following this pattern **X hemen/hor/han dago**, e.g. **Liburua hemen dago**.

Exercise 7 Ask questions about where each thing is, and answer, using the pattern **Non dago X? Hemen/Hor/Han**, e.g. **Non dago aulkia? Hemen**; or the pattern: **X hemen (al) dago? Bai/Ez**.

Exercise 8 You are in San Sebastian (Donostia) looking for the bus to Bilbao (Bilbo). Take the dialogue we have studied as a general guide, and imagine the conversation(s) you might have at the station.

Each of the six ‘which and where’ words we have just seen has a second form, sometimes called emphatic, obtained by adding -xe or -txe to the basic form. It is enough for now if you understand such forms. They are:

hau	or	hauxe
hori	or	horixe
hura	or	huraxe
hemen	or	hementxe
hor	or	hortxe
han	or	hantxe

Pronunciation and spelling

The letter **y** is not used in native Basque words in standard spelling. However, the letter **i** between two vowels is pronounced like the **y** in the English word *kayak*.

Exercise 9 How do you pronounce Baiona, mahaia, leihoa? (Ignore the **h**, which is silent in most people’s pronunciation.)

Language and life

Basque towns

The following are the five main towns in the Basque Country (see the map on p. vii). The Basque name is given on the left, and the Spanish name on the right (or, in the case of Baiona, the French name).

Bilbo (also Bilbao)	Bilbao
Donostia (also Donosti)	San Sebastian
Gasteiz	Vitoria
Iruñea	Pamplona
Baiona	Bayonne

From this point onwards, these towns will usually be referred to by their Basque names in this book.

Learn how we say ‘the Donostia bus’ and so on:

Baionako autobusa
Bilboko autobusa
Donostiako autobusa
Gasteizko autobusa
Iruñeko autobusa

Pronunciation and spelling

The letter **ñ** is used in few words in standard Basque spelling. Its sound is like the *ny* in *canyon*.

Doing things with words

Being polite

We can ask for someone’s attention by saying **Barkatu!** ‘Excuse me!’, ask for something saying **Mesedez!** ‘Please!’, and show gratitude with **Eskerrik asko!** ‘Thank you!’ However, excessive use of expressions like these in Basque conveys the message that one is showing so much courtesy as to distance oneself socially from the person addressed. Basques often prefer to convey a sense of cameraderie by not standing on ceremony. To sound natural in Basque, therefore, avoid the temptation to say **Barkatu**, **Mesedez** and **Eskerrik asko** each time you would use *Excuse me*, *Please* and *Thank you* in an equivalent situation in English. Remember that **Eskertik asko** actually means ‘Thank you *very much*’; there is no casual, routine way to say just ‘Thanks!’ in Basque. To get someone’s attention without being over-polite, one can say **Aizu!** which literally means ‘Listen!’.

Exercise 10 Reread dialogue 1, looking closely at when and how each of the above-mentioned expressions is used.

Dialogue 2

On the bus

Elin and Xabier sit together on the bus to Donostia and get into a conversation

- XABIER: Nongoa zara?
- ELIN: Bangorkoa naiz.
- XABIER: Bangor? Hori non dago?
- ELIN: Gales Herrian.
- XABIER: A, galesa zara?
- ELIN: Bai, baina Inglaterran bizi naiz. Londresen. Eta zu non bizi zara?
- XABIER: Ni, Donostian bizi naiz. Donostiarra naiz. Bainaz nere familia Nafarroakoa da, Leitzakoa.
- ELIN: Nere ama galesa da, Bangorkoa. Bainaz nere aita Londreskoa da. Eta nere anaia Eskozian bizi da.

Vocabulary

aita	father
ama	mother
baina	but
bera	he, she, him, her
bere	his, her, its
bizi da	lives
bizi naiz	(I) live
bizi zara	(you) live
donostiarra	Donostian, native of Donostia
ere	too, also
Eskozia	Scotland
eta	and (<i>often pronounced ta</i>)
euskalduna	Basque (person etc.)
familia	family
galesa	Welsh
Gales Herria	Wales
Inglaterra	England
-koa	from, native of
Leitza	a small town in Nafarroa
Londres	London
Nafarroa	Navarre, a province
naiz	(I) am
nere	my
ni	I, me
nongoa	where from, native of or belonging to where
Nongoa zara?	Where are you from?
zara	(you) are

zu	you
zure	your

Pronunciation and spelling

When an **n** in the middle of a word is preceded by the letter **i**, most Basque speakers pronounce it as if it were **ñ**, i.e. like *ny*. Thus **baina** is generally pronounced ‘bainya’ or ‘banya’.

Strategies for communication

Saying where you are from

Study this exchange:

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| A: Nongoa zara? | Where are you from? |
| B: Galesa naiz. | I'm Welsh. |
| Bangorkoa naiz. | I'm from Bangor. |

You now know the singular of the present tense of one of the verbs ‘to be’:

naiz	(I) am
zara	(you) are
da	(he, she, it) is

In **Bangorkoa** ‘(a person or thing) from Bangor, or belonging to Bangor’, we have **Bangor** followed by two suffixes: **-ko** meaning ‘from’ or ‘pertaining to’, and **-a**; you will understand this construction better later. Words ending in **n** or **l**, instead of adding **-ko**, take **-go**, thus **Dublingoa da** ‘He/She is from Dublin’. Likewise, from **non** ‘where?’ we have **nongo** ‘where from?’: **Nongoa zara?**

Alternatively we can make use of a special adjective such as **gales(a)** ‘Welsh’, **euskaldun(a)** ‘Basque’. Here are some names of nationalities you may need to know:

euskaldun	Basque (may also mean ‘Basque-speaking’)
español	Spanish (as opposed to Basque)
frances	French (as opposed to Basque)
ingles	English
irlandes	Irish
americano	American (from either the United States or anywhere in North, Central or South America according to context)

Adjectives expressing origin from Basque towns end in -ar or -tar, e.g. **donostiar(ra)** ‘from Donostia’, **bilbotar(ra)** ‘from Bilbo’, **gasteiztar(ra)** ‘from Gasteiz’, **leitzar(ra)** ‘from Leitza’. The -(t)ar suffix is also added to names of countries to form alternative names of nationalities, e.g. **irlandar(ra)** ‘Irish’, **españiar(ra)** ‘Spanish’, etc.

Pronunciation and spelling

Adjectives denoting nationalities do not have a capital letter: **Nere aita euskalduna da.**

Words ending in **r** double this letter in spelling when a vowel is added, in order to indicate that the trilled pronunciation is retained, hence **donostiarra**.

Exercise 11 Have a conversation with someone about where you are each from, and ask about the other person’s father or mother. Use the above dialogue as a guide.

Saying where you live

Study this exchange:

A: Non bizi zara?	Where do you live?
B: Inglaterran bizi naiz.	I live in England.
Londresen bizi naiz.	I live in London.

In Basque ‘to live’ is a compound verb, formed from the word **bizi** and the verb ‘to be’, thus:

bizi naiz	(I) live
bizi zara	(you) live
bizi da	(he, she) lives

‘In’ a place is expressed by the name of the place plus **-n** if the word ends in a vowel, or **-en** after a consonant:

Bilbon	in Bilbo
Gasteizen	in Gasteiz

Amerika has the exceptional form **Ameriketan** ‘in America’. Note these names of countries:

Euskal Herria	Basque Country (traditional name)
Euskadi	another name for the Basque Country

Espainia	Spain
Frantzia	France
Inglaterra	England
Irlanda	Ireland

Exercise 12 Tell a friend as much as you can about Elin and her family, based on the information in the dialogue. Begin like this: **Elin galesa da ...** Mention where people live and where they are from.

Saying what you mean

Singular personal pronouns

Study these pairs of sentences:

Nere ama hemen bizi da. My mother lives here.

Hemen bizi da. She lives here.

Ni hemen bizi naiz. As for myself, I live here.

Hemen bizi naiz. I live here.

Non bizi zara zu? What about you, where do you live?

Non bizi zara? Where do you live?

We saw that the subject can be omitted in Basque when its reference is understood, without needing to insert a pronoun as in English:

Hemen dago.

Hemen bizi da.

This is also true for human subjects, where English uses a personal pronoun such as *I*, *you*, *he* or *she*. Such pronouns exist in Basque, but their use in such contexts has a more emphatic meaning, as illustrated in the above examples. In the great majority of cases your Basque will sound much more idiomatic if you avoid the temptation to put in a subject pronoun: for example, ‘I am’ is normally *naiz*, not *ni naiz*; ‘he lives’ is *bizi da* more often than *bera bizi da*, and so on.

However, sometimes the pronouns are needed. Here are the singular ones. The corresponding possessives, which you have already encountered, are given on the right:

ni	I, me	nere	my
zu	you	zure	your
bera	he, him; she, her; it	bere	his; her; its

Notice in particular that Basque makes no distinction between 'him', 'her' and 'it'.

Exercise 13 Answer these questions about yourself and your family without repeating the subject:

Nongoa zara zu?

Zure aita nongoa da?

Zure ama non bizi da?

Reading

Elin, Xabier and Naroa

Elin galesa da. Bangorkoa da. Bangor Gales Herrian dago. Bere ama ere galesa da, baina bere aita ez. Aita inglesa da.

Xabier euskalduna da. Donostiarra da, eta Donostian bizi da. Bere familia Leitzakoa da. Leitza Nafarroan dago.

Naroa Elinen laguna da. Euskalduna da, zarauztarra. Zarautz Gipuzkoako itsasaldean dago. Herri polita da. Hondartza dauka. Naroa irakaslea da.

Elin oporretan dago Euskal Herrian. Orain Donostiako autobusean dago.

Autobus hau nora doa? Zarautza? Ez. Bilbotik Donostiara doa. Gero Elin Donostiatik Zarautza joango da. Trenean joango da. Trena Donostiatik Zarautza doa.

Naroa, bere laguna, etxeан dago. Zarautzen dago. Gero lanera joango da. Etxe polita dauka. Elin oporretan dago, eta Zarautza doa: oso pozik dago!

Vocabulary

dauka	has, has got	doa	is going, goes
etxe	home, house, flat	gero	afterwards, then, later
Gipuzkoa	(a Basque province)	herri	town, village
hondartza	beach	irakasle	teacher
itsasalde	coast	joango da	will go

lagun	friend	ian	work
lanera	to work	nora	where to
oporretan	on holidays	orain	now
oso	very	polit	pretty
pozik	happy	tren	train
Zarautz	(a town in Gipuzkoa)	zarauztar	'Zarautzan'

Pronunciation and spelling

We have already discussed the pronunciation of z, s and x in Basque. The combinations tz, ts and tx sound almost like a t followed by z/s/x, but each combination makes a single sound. Tx sounds like English ch. Some Basque speakers do not distinguish between tz and ts.

The letter j is pronounced differently in different parts of the Basque Country. In and around Gipuzkoa, it sounds like the ch in *loch*, i.e. like a throaty h sound. Another common pronunciation is similar to the y in *yoyo*. In a few words it always has the latter sound, e.g. Jon 'John'. The verb joan 'go' should be pronounced either 'hwan' or 'yo-an', although several other dialectal pronunciations of this common word exist.

Saying what you mean

'In', 'on', 'at', 'to' and 'from'

Study these words:

Donostia	hondartza	etxea
Donostia	the beach	the home
Donostian	hondartzan	etxeean
in Donostia	at/on the beach	at home
Donostiara	hondartzara	etxera
to Donostia	to the beach	(go) home
Donostiatik	hondartzatik	etxetik
from Donostia	from the beach	from home
Zarautz	Irun	trena
Zarautz	Irun	the train

Zarautzen	Irunen	trenean
in Zarautz	in Irun	in/on the train
Zarautza	Irun(er)a	trenera
to Zarautz	to Irun	to the train
Zarauztik	Irundik	trenetik
from Zarautz	from Irun	from the train

English expresses case relations – including the spatial relations shown here – by means of prepositions like ‘in’, ‘on’, ‘at’, ‘to’ and ‘from’. There are no prepositions in Basque. Instead, Basque has suffixes called case markers, added on to the ends of nouns. Three of these are:

- n (-en, -an, -ean) meaning ‘in’, ‘on’ or ‘at’ (telling *where*)
- ra (-a, -era) meaning ‘to’
- tik (-dik, -etik) meaning ‘from’

and you have already encountered a fourth case suffix:

- ko (-go, -eko) meaning ‘of, from, belonging to’

as in **Donostiako autobusa**. A full list of Basque case markers for reference appears in the Appendix. Do not worry yet about the reasons for the various forms of these suffixes: just learn each form as you find it. But take care to learn the meanings of these endings.

Exercise 14 Find the words in the text that mean:

in Nafarroa	on the coast	on the bus
to San Sebastian	to Zarautz	from San Sebastian
at home	in Zarautz	on the train
from Bilbao	(go) home	to work
in San Sebastian	in the Basque Country	in Zarautz

Exercise 15 (review) Translate into Basque:

- 1 Where is Elin from?
- 2 She is from Bangor.
- 3 Bangor? Where is Bangor? In America?
- 4 No, no. Bangor is in Wales.
- 5 Does she live in Bangor now?
- 6 No, now she lives in England. In London.
- 7 And where is she now?
- 8 She's going from Bilbo to Donostia.

Language and life

Speaking Basque

How would *you* answer these questions?

Badakizu euskaraz?	Do you speak Basque?
Euskalduna zara?	Are you Basque/a Basque speaker?
Nongoa zara?	Where are you from?

As a foreigner (**kanpotarra** or **atzerritarra**) speaking even a little bit (**pixka bat**) of Basque in the Basque Country, you will be bombarded constantly with these and similar questions, asked out of friendly interest, surprise and fascination. In fact, you will become a subject of conversation, for the person you have met is likely to tell the next person she or he sees all about you.

There are several reasons for this. One is that Basques mostly live in small towns or villages where newcomers are noticed and talked about. As a foreigner, making conversation with Basque-speaking people is very easy if you can speak Basque, for two reasons. For one thing, although some English is now taught in the schools, most adult Basques speak no foreign languages. Basque thus truly opens the door to communication.

More importantly, by speaking some Basque you will have shown, in the eyes of Basque speakers, that you are genuinely interested in their country (**herria**) and their culture (**kultura**); they will be flattered. Since foreign speakers of Basque are a novelty, they will also be healthily curious about you. Perhaps they will even admire you and present you to their friends as a fine example.

Basque speakers are proud of their heritage, and speaking the language has a strong symbolic value as well as a practical one. Basque speakers (**euskaldunak**) tend to feel and express an all-pervading friendliness and solidarity among themselves that is untranslatable, yet perfectly accessible to those who learn their language (**hizkuntza**) and customs (**ohiturak**), and if you can speak Basque (**euskaraz hitzegin**) you will be more than 'just a foreigner' in their eyes.

2 Kafetxo bat?

Cup of coffee?

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- the suffix -k (1)
- asking questions (2)

Saying what you mean

- numbers (1)
- 'want (to)'
- the future tense
- saying when (1)
- saying where you are or how you are

Strategies for communication

- bars: ordering and paying
- saying what you do
- saying goodbye
- buying train tickets
- writing to a friend

Talking about ...

- drinks
- public transport

Language and life

- Basque bars

Dialogue 1

In a bar in Donostia

Xabier decides to accompany Elin to the railway station. The train is not due yet, and Elin suggests a drink in the station bar. At the bar

ELIN: Zuk zer nahi duzu?

XABIER: Nik zuritoa.

ELIN (*calling the barman over*): Aizu!

BARMAN: Bai? Zer nahi duzue?

ELIN: Zurito bat eta kafesne bat.

XABIER: Eta zer, oporetan?

ELIN: Bai, Zarautzen. Zuk zer egiten duzu?

XABIER: Ikaslea naiz. Kazetaritza ikasten dut Bilbon. Telebistan lan egin nahi dut.

ELIN: Nik telebistan lan egiten dut!

XABIER: Bai? Non, Londresen?

ELIN: Bai ...

XABIER: Begira, zure trena dator.

ELIN: Hartu nere telefonoa: 13 34 58 (bat-hiru hiru-lau bost-zortzi). Nere izena Elin da.

XABIER: Eta ni Xabier naiz.

ELIN (*to the barman*): Aizu, zenbat da?

BARMAN: 200 (berrehun) pezeta. Eskerrik asko. Gero arte.

ELIN and XABIER: Bai, agur.

(*Outside.*)

XABIER: Ba, ikusi arte. Ongi pasa Zarautzen.

ELIN: Bai. Deitu, e!

XABIER: Bai, deituko dut eta hitzegingo dugu.

Vocabulary

agur!	goodbye!
ba	well, well then
bat	one, a(n)
begira!	look!
dator	is coming
deitu	call
Deitu, e!	Give me a call sometime, okay?
deituko dut	I'll call
egiten duzu	(do) you do
gero arte!	bye! (<i>casual; lit. See you later!</i>)
hartu ...	here's ... (<i>lit. take ...</i>)
hitzegingo dugu	we'll talk
ikasle	student
ikasten dut	I study
ikusi arte!	see you! (<i>lit. until sec</i>)

izen	name
kafesne	coffee with milk
kafetxo	little cup of coffee (<i>diminutive of kafe</i> 'coffee')
kazetaritza	journalism
lan egin	(to) work
lan egiten dut	I work
nahi dut	I want
nahi duzu(e)	(do) you want
nik	I
ongi pasa!	have a good time!
pezeta	peseta
telebista	television
telefono	telephone, phone number
zenbat	how much, how many
zuk	you
zurito	small glass of beer

Pronunciation and spelling

H is silent except in the northern Basque Country. In words where there is an **h** between two vowels in the spelling, the two vowels may form a diphthong; thus **nahi** and **bai** usually rhyme. But some combinations of vowels cannot form diphthongs, e.g. **bihar** pronounced **bi-ar**. When an **h** separates two like vowels, as in **zahar**, the tendency is to collapse the two vowels into one: **zar**. **Mahai** is usually pronounced **mai** (and **mahaia** pronounced **maya**).

Saying what you mean

Numbers (1)

Study these exchanges:

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| A: Zein da zure telefonoa? | What is your phone number? |
| B: Lau-bost bat-bat zortzi-hiru. | 451183. |
| A: Zenbat da? | How much is it? |
| B: Ehun pezeta. | A hundred pesetas. |

The numbers from one to ten, and the hundreds from 100 to 1,000, are as follows:

1	bat	100	ehun
2	bi	200	berrehun
3	hiru	300	hirurehun
4	lau	400	laurehun
5	bost	500	bostehun
6	sei	600	seirehun
7	zazpi	700	zazpirehun
8	zortzi	800	zortzirehun
9	bederatzi	900	bederatzirehun
10	hamar	1000	mila

‘Zero’ is **huts** or **zero** (rhyming with **gero**). Since 100 pesetas are worth approximately 50 pence, many prices involve the hundreds, so you will need to be familiar with these numbers!

Exercise 1 Read these sentences out loud:

Hau da nere telefonoa: 62 50 27.

Bilbotik Donostiara 100 kilometro dago.

Zenbat da? 300 pezeta.

Pronunciation and spelling

Remember how to pronounce **n** following **i**? (See page 16.) The same rule applies to **l**, which after an **i** is pronounced ‘ly’; thus **mila** is pronounced ‘milya’. In a few Basque words this sound is spelt **ll**, e.g. **Pello**.

Exercise 2 Practise pronouncing these words:

baina, mila, txakolina, minutu, biletetako, takila, hegazkina,
apirila, ekaina, uztaila, andereño, Oñati, Pello.

Want (to)’

Study these sentences:

Zer nahi duzu?

What do you want?

Kafea nahi dut.

I want (some) coffee.

Telebistan lan egin nahi dut.

I want to work in television.

Here are the singular forms for ‘to want’:

nahi dut

(I) want

nahi duzu

(you) want

nahi du

(he, she, it) wants

They are used to say someone wants something (e.g. coffee), and also to say someone wants to do something (e.g. work in television).

Exercise 3 Answer these questions about the dialogue:

- 1 Zer nahi du Xabierrek?
- 2 Non lan egin nahi du?
- 3 Zer nahi du Elinek?
- 4 Nora joan nahi du?

The form **nahi duzue** is used when addressing more than one person.

Grammatical nuts and bolts

The suffix -k (1)

Study these sentences:

Zuk zer nahi duzu?	What do you want?
Nik kafea nahi dut.	I want coffee.
Nik zurito bat.	I('ll have) a zurito.

Of course you will be wondering why it's **Elin-ek** and **Xabierrek** in exercise 3, and also perhaps why we have **nik** and **zuk**, rather than **ni** and **zu**, for 'I' and 'you' in this unit. Well, in Basque there are two different kinds of subject, one without -(e)k as in:

Ni hemen bizi naiz.

and one with it, as in:

Nik kafea nahi dut.

The choice depends mainly on which verb is used. Here's a rule: verbs taking the auxiliary **naiz** have subjects without -k; verbs taking the auxiliary **dut** have subjects with -k.

Exercise 4 Fill in the blanks in this conversation with **ni**, **nik**, **zu** or **zuk**:

XABIER: _____ zer egin nahi duzu?
 ELIN: _____ Donostiarra joan nahi dut.
 XABIER: Bai? _____ Donostian bizi naiz.

Strategies for communication

Bars: ordering and paying

Study this dialogue:

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| A: Zer nahi duzu? | What would you like? |
| B: Kafesne bat. | A coffee with milk. |
| <i>(Later.)</i> | |
| B: Aizu, zenbat da? | I say, how much is it? |
| B: Berrehun pezeta. | Two hundred pesetas. |

This little routine is well worth memorizing! A couple of pointers will permit you to substitute other items in it as appropriate. Note first that **bat**, meaning either 'one' or 'a' (or 'an'), must be placed after the noun: **zurito bat** 'a/one small beer' etc. If you don't use **bat**, the noun will take the -a suffix: **zuritoa, kafesnea** etc.; this can mean 'a' or 'the' 'beer/coffee/etc.'. It is correct to ask for **Kafesnea** ('A coffee') in a bar; **Kafesne bat** emphasises that you want just one.

Of course, you may want to ask for more than one. The important thing to remember is that the other numbers precede the noun, unlike **bat**. So: **Hiru kafesne** 'Three coffees', **Lau zurito** 'Four beers'. Also notice that the noun takes no ending with the numerals.

Exercise 5 Supply the missing sentences, then compare with the dialogue:

(Elin wants a white coffee.)

ELIN: _____?

XABIER: Nik zuritoa.

ELIN (calling the barman): _____!

BARMAN: Bai? Zer nahi duzue?

ELIN: _____.

(Later.)

ELIN (asking the barman how much it is): _____?

BARMAN: Berrehun pezeta. Eskerrik asko. Gero arte.

Saying what you do

Study these sentences:

- Zer egiten duzu?** What do you do?
Ikaslea naiz. I am a student.
Telebistan lan egiten dut. I work in television.

Exercise 6 Make up a conversation between yourself and Elin's friend Naroa about what each of you does. See how many things you might be able to say. You may find some items in the following vocabulary list useful:

Professions:

abokatu	lawyer, solicitor	idazkari	secretary
apaiz	priest	idazle	writer
arkitekto	architect	ikasle	student
arrantzale	fisherman	injeniero	engineer
artista	artist	irakasle	teacher,
baserritar	farmer		professor
bulegari	office worker	kantari	singer
dendari	shopkeeper	kazetari	reporter,
dentista	dentist		journalist
elektrizista	electrician	mediku	doctor
erizain	nurse	mekaniko	mechanic
ertzain/polizia	policeman	moja	nun
etxeokoandre	housewife	politikari	politician
funtzionario	civil servant	zuzendari	director

Other expressions:

Zer egiten duzu?	What do you do?
Non egiten duzu lan?	Where do you work?
Zein da zure lanbidea?	What is your occupation?
... lan egiten dut.	I work ...
Ez daukat lanik.	I haven't got a job.
Langabezian nago.	I am on the dole.
fabrika batean	in a factory
bulego batean	in an office
enpresa batean	in a firm
eskola batean	in a school
unibertsitatean	in a university, at university
telebistan	in/on television

Saying goodbye

Notice that the barman says **Gero arte** to Elin and Xabier, literally 'See you later', although he doesn't really expect to. This has

become just a casual way of saying ‘Bye-bye’. Agur ‘Goodbye’ is slightly more solemn. Some people say Adio.

It may seem strange to answer ‘Goodbye!’ by saying ‘Yes!’, but this is done in Basque: notice how Elin and Xabier respond to the barman.

The word **arte**, placed after a word, means ‘until’: **Gero arte** is really ‘Until later’. You can also say:

Bihar arte.

Until tomorrow.

Ikusi arte.

Until (we) see (each other).

and so on.

Exercise 7 Find and learn the words or phrases in the text that mean:

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1 goodbye | 3 enjoy yourself |
| 2 see you later | 4 I'll be seeing you |

Talking about . . .

Drinks

Now that you know how to order things in a bar or café, you will want to know the names for some drinks (**edariak**). To offer someone a drink, ask unceremoniously:

Zer nahi duzu? What do you want?

Zer edan nahi duzu? What do you want to drink?

Zer hartuko duzu? What will you have?

Non-alcoholic options include **ura** (‘water’), or more specifically **ur minerala** which may be either **gasarekin** (with gas, i.e. fizzy) or **gasik gabe** (without gas, i.e. still); also:

mosto a kind of grape juice

tonika tonic

esne milk

esne bero hot milk

esne hotz cold milk

zumo juice

laranja ur or laranjazko zumo orange juice

kas a common brand of ‘pop’

kas naranja orangeade (*Spanish*)

kas limon	lemonade (<i>Spanish</i>)
cocacola	coke

Coffee (**kafea**) is served almost everywhere and comes in three varieties. **Hutsa** ('pure') is a black espresso. **Ebakia** ('cut') is a **kafe huts** with a drop of hot milk added. **Kafesnea** ('coffee-milk'), which constitutes breakfast for some people but is also drunk between or after meals, is a very milky yet strong coffee. None of these resembles a British or American coffee, which is much more watery. **Deskafeinatua** will get you a cup of warm milk with a packet of instant 'decaf' powder. **Txokolatea** is not available everywhere; it is served strong and thick, and may be accompanied by toast (**tostadak**) or, most typically of all, long, thin, doughnutty, sugar-coated **txurroak** (*churros* in Spanish). Tea is best avoided in Basque cafés, but if you must have one, it's called **tea** (i.e. **te-a**). Unless you ask for it **esne pixka batekin** (with a little milk) or **limoiarekin**, it will be served plain.

Coming to alcohol, you can get wine (**ardoa**), beer (**garagardoa** or **zerbeza**) and various liqueurs and spirits (known generically as a **kopa**). Wine comes in three colours: red is called 'black' (**beltza**), rosé is 'red' (**gorria**) and white is 'white' (**zuria**: this is the least popular, except for certain local varieties, such as **txakolina**, a very young, faintly sparkling wine produced on the coast). The ordinary wine served in bars is of frankly poor quality; to get a better one, these days more and more people request **ardo berezia** (special wine). This normally comes from the high-class Rioja wine-producing region on the southern border of the Basque Country (**Errioxa** in Basque), and is more expensive but still reasonable by British standards.

Beer may be bottled or on tap. The former may be ordered by brand name. Tap beer is served in two sizes; the larger (roughly a half-pint) is called **kaña**, and the smaller one (very short) is a **zurito**.

Cider (**sagardoa**) is produced locally in the region surrounding Donostia in special establishments called **sagardotegiak** which, during the late winter and early spring, may be visited and the cider drunk straight from the vat; traditional food is also served in a rustic atmosphere. This natural, unsweetened cider, much liked by the locals but not always appreciated by foreigners, is also available in some bars and restaurants by the bottle. Served cool, it is poured out slowly from a height in small quantities (it takes a little practice) and gulped straight down before it loses the slight fizz.

A **kopa** of local origin and considerable popularity is **patxaran**; it is obtained by soaking very tart sloe berries in very sweet anisette. Shops and bars offer several commercial brands, but it is far better when home-made by a Basque family.

Dialogue 2

At the ticket window

Elin is buying a ticket

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| TICKET-SELLER: | Bai? |
| ELIN: | Bat Zarautza. Zenbat da? |
| TICKET-SELLER: | 210 (berrehun eta hamar). Hartu txartela. |
| ELIN: | Noiz aterako da? |
| TICKET-SELLER: | Bost minutu barru. |
| ELIN: | Eskerrik asko. |

Vocabulary

aterako da	it will leave	noiz	when
barru	within, in ... time	txartel	ticket
minutu	minute		

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Asking questions (2)

Study these questions:

Non dago?	Where is it?
Non bizi zara?	Where do you live?
Zer nahi duzu?	What do you want?
Zer egiten duzu?	What do you do?
Zenbat da?	How much is it?
Noiz aterako da?	When will it depart?

The most common question words are the following:

zer	what	non	where
nor	who	noiz	when

zein	which	nola	how
zenbat	how many, how much	nolako	what kind of
		zergatik	why

Non is used for asking where something is or where something happens; for ‘where to’ and ‘where from’ there are special forms:

non	where	nora	where to
nondik	where from	nongo	pertaining to where

Question words precede the verb: observe the above examples. Subjects, objects etc. usually follow the verb, e.g.

**Non bizi da zure anaia? – Nere anaia Eskozian bizi da.
Nor bizi da hemen?**

The other possibility is to put these elements at the beginning of the sentence, e.g.

Zure anaia non bizi da?

Exercise 8 Answer these questions about yourself:

- 1 Non bizi zara?
- 2 Zer egiten duzu?
- 3 Nola (*here = ‘what’*) da zure izena?
- 4 Nora joango zara oporretan?

Strategies for communication

Buying train tickets

Exercise 9 Study Dialogue 2 again. You are at the Zarautz railway station and want to go to Donostia. Make up the conversation between yourself and the ticket-seller. Ask for the ticket, its price and when the train will depart.

Talking about . . .

Public transport

Today the most popular way to move around the country is by car. Despite a hilly terrain (except in the south), the Basque Country

has good roads (**karreterak** or **errepeideak**), and in the most densely populated regions there are now motorways (**autobiak**). The best motorways, called **autopistak**, are privately owned and charge a stiff toll (**peajeas**). Coach (**autobus**) and train (**tren**) travel is also possible, at a considerably cheaper cost than in Britain. Tickets (**txartelak** or **bileteak**) may be sold on the coach or train itself or at the station (**geltokian**); it is a good idea to get this **informazioa** ahead of time. In some cases there are cheaper return (**joan eta etorri**) tickets, which may only be valid for use the same day. To find out times (**orduak**), you may manage to get hold of an **ordutegi** ('timetable') from the station; otherwise try asking in a **taberna** (if the **tabernari** doesn't know, one of the customers might). There will probably be more buses or trains running if it's an **astegun/lanegun** ('weekday/workday') than if it's a **jaiegun** (i.e. Saturday, Sunday, or public holiday). If there's no information desk, at the ticket window (**takila**) in the station you can ask which bus/train you need to take (**hartu**), what time it's leaving (**Zer ordutan ate-ratzen da?**), whether you will have to change (**aldatu**), and you may even be lucky enough to get a **mapa**. If you miss (**galdu**) it, you'll have to wait around (**itzoin**), and catch (**harrapatu**) the next one (**hurrengoa**). Of course, if you **galdu** the last one (**azkena**), you may have to **hartu taxi bat!**

Letter

Elin writes to Naroa

Vocabulary

besarkada	hug	hegazkin	plane
erantzun	answer	iritsi da	arrived
gaur	today	iritsiko naiz	(I) will arrive
gutun	letter	kaixo	hello
handi	big	laister	soon
maiatz(a)	May	seguraski	probably
nago	(I) am	uztail(a)	July
nekatuta	tired	zer moduz?	how (are you)?
nola	how	zaude	you are, are you?

1.914 maiatzaren 28a

Londres

Kaixo Narro,

Zer moduz zude? Zure gutuna geur
intsi da. Bai, ni ere nekatuta nago.

Uztailean oportetan nago. Seguraski hegoz-
kinean joango naiz Bilboea. Nola iritsibo naiz
Bilbotik 2arantza?

Erantzun bister!

Besarkada handi bat --

Elin

Saying what you mean

The future tense

Study this table:

joan	go	joango naiz	I shall go, I'm going to go
atera	leave	aterako naiz	I shall leave (etc.)
iritsi	arrive	iritsiko naiz	I'll arrive
egin	make	egingo dut	I'll make
lan egin	work	lan egingo dut	I'll work
hitzegin	speak	hitzegingo dut	I'll speak
ikasi	learn	ikasiko dut	I'll learn
ikusi	see	ikusiko dut	I'll see
erosi	buy	erosiko dut	I'll buy
hartu	take	hartuko dut	I'll take
deitu	call	deituko dut	I'll call
bukatu	finish	bukatuko dut	I'll finish

The future tense is formed quite regularly by adding **-ko** to the verb (-go after **n** or **I**) and adding the right auxiliary, which may be **naiz** etc. (i.e. the verb 'to be') or **dut** etc. (compare **nahi dut** 'I want', page 26). The general rule is that intransitive verbs take **naiz** and transitive ones (verbs having a direct object) take **dut**.

Exercise 10 Translate into Basque:

- 1 I'll go to Bilbo on the train.
- 2 Elin will go from Donostia to Zarautz by train.
- 3 I'll speak in Basque.
- 4 We'll see.
- 5 Will you learn Basque?

Saying when (1)

Study these expressions:

orain	now	martxoan	in March	bost minutu barru
oraintxe	right now	apirilean	in April	in five minutes' time
gaur	today	maiatzean	in May	hiru egun barru
orduan	then	ekainean	in June	in three days' time
laister	soon	uztailean	in July	
gero	later, then	abuztuan	in August	
bihar	tomorrow			

Exercise 11 Look through the readings in the book so far and find all the examples of the forms shown here.

Saying where you are or how you are

Study these sentences:

Elin Euskal Herrian dago.	Elin is in the Basque Country.
Oporretan nago.	I'm on holiday.
Nekatuta zaude?	Are you tired?

Basque has two verbs 'to be'. You learnt the singular of one of them, **izan**, in Unit 1. The other is **egon**. Here are both of them:

izan		egon
naiz	(I) am	nago
zara	(you) are	zaude
da	(he, she, it) is	dago

Egon is used for saying where something or someone is, e.g.

Naroa etxean dago.

It is also used to express a temporary state, e.g.

Elin pozik dago.

Nekatuta nago.

Exercise 12 Translate into Basque:

- 1 Are you on holiday?
- 2 I too am happy.
- 3 Naroa is at home now.
- 4 I'm very tired.

Strategies for communication

Writing to a friend

Exercise 13 Reread Elin's letter, then put these lines of another letter in the right order.

- 1 baina gero nola iritsiko naiz Miarritzetik Donostiara?
- 2 Seán.
- 3 Dublin.
- 4 Abuztuan oporretan nago.
- 5 Erantzun laister.
- 6 Zer moduz zaude?
- 7 1994ko ekainaren 10a
- 8 Hegazkinean joango naiz Miarritzera,
- 9 Besarkada handi bat,
- 10 Zure gutuna gaur iritsi da.
- 11 Kaixo Xabier,

Exercise 14 (review) Fill in the blanks with the correct endings, without checking against the original letter until you've tried the whole exercise. These are the possible endings:

-a	-ean	-etan	-ra	-tik
----	------	-------	-----	------

Kaixo Naroc. Zure gutun. — gaur intsi da. Uztail —
 oporr — nago. Seguraski hegazkin — jaongo naiz
 Bilbo. Nola intsiko naiz Bilbo — Etxearts? —?
 Erantzu laister. Elin.

Language and life

Basque bars

Both bars and cafés serve alcoholic beverages, and both offer coffee too; the main difference is that cafés are smarter and somewhat more expensive. In most villages you will find no cafés, but there will probably be at least a bar where you can get a cup of coffee or a glass of wine, and also some gossip if you ask for it. In one-bar villages, the bar is often the shop too, so you can buy some bread (*ogia*) or local cheese (*gazta*) if it takes your fancy — or if you want some extra conversation. Men, women, children and the occasional dog will wander casually in and out, all on first-name terms, of course.

Naturally, in the towns there is a different atmosphere, but the important point is that a bar anywhere in this country is not only a watering hole but a meeting place, everything from an unofficial information bureau to a mus club (*mus* is a popular four-handed card game you may see being played noisily on lazy Sunday afternoons). There is relatively little drunkenness.

In some small bars there are no tables; when there are, there is generally no table service. Normally one pays when leaving, not when served. Towns have many bars, particularly in certain districts such as the old quarter (*alde zaharra*). The custom is to move from one bar to another having just one short drink in each, rather than staying in one place as one would in Britain. In this way one spends as much time strolling as drinking, and when in a group you can change conversation partners frequently. People take turns paying for each round of drinks. This mostly takes place in the evening preceding a late dinner, and the most common drinks are wine or beer. The quantities are small, so that in one evening quite a few bars can be visited. After dinner, coffee, liqueurs or a longer beer are appropriate, and there is less moving about!

Some bars in towns also offer morsels to eat, called **pintxoak** (*pinchos* in Spanish). One eats only one **pintxo**, and since these are laid out on the counter for people to take, an honour system is in force, which you are advised to respect rigorously, so that you (and other foreign visitors) will be welcomed back next time. When paying before you leave, you will be asked what **pintxos** have been eaten.

3 Irītsi zara!

You've arrived!

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- basic verb forms

Saying what you mean

- 'have to'
- negative sentences
- 'can't'
- talking about 'us'
- months and dates

Doing things with words

- telling people what to do

Strategies for communication

- giving directions
- finding out who someone is
- getting to speak to someone
- making sure you understand

Talking about ...

- directions
- yourself

Dialogue 1

Outside the station in Zarautz

Elin asks the way to Naroa's school

ELIN (to a man): Aizu, barkatu!

MAN: Bai?

ELIN: Non dago ikastola?

MAN: Ez dakit. Ez naiz hemengoa.

ELIN (to a woman): Barkatu!

WOMAN: Bai?

ELIN: Ikastola non dago?

WOMAN: Begira, segi aurrera eta pasatu semaforoa. Gero lehenengo kalean ezkerretara. Bai?

ELIN: Semaforoa eta gero ezkerretara.

WOMAN: Hori da. Ikastola eskubi aldean ikusiko duzu. Ez dago urrutি.

ELIN: Eskerrik asko. Agur.

WOMAN: Bai, agur.

Vocabulary

alde	side
aurrrera	forward, ahead
dakit	I know
eskubi(tara)	right
eskubi aldean	on the right-hand side
ez	not
ez dakit	I don't know
ezker(retara)	left
gero	then, afterwards
lehenengo	from here
hori da!	that's right!
ikastola	non-state-controlled Basque-medium elementary or secondary school
ikusiko duzu	you'll see
kale	street
lehenengo	first
pasatu	pass, go past
segi	continue, go on, carry on
semaforo	traffic light(s)
urruti	far

Talking about . . .

Directions

Asking how to find something or get somewhere is a valuable communication skill. It is also a good way to get into a conversation

with a stranger and practise your Basque! People are only too happy to help (*lagundu*) a foreign visitor, whether or not they actually know the way (*bidea*)!

If you are lost (*Galduta nago*, ‘I am lost’; *Galduta gaude*, ‘We are lost’) or are trying to find something (*Aurkitu nahi dut/dugu ...* ‘I/We want to find ...’), just approach someone and ask *Aizu* (or *Barkatu*), *non dago ... ?* Or, to find out the way to the beach, you can ask *Nola joaten da hondartzara?* ‘How do you get to the beach?’

You may need to understand the names of a few *landmarks*, such as:

aldapa	slope, hill	ibai	river
autopista	motorway	itsaso	sea
baserrí	farmhouse	izkina	corner
bide	path, track, way	kale	street
edifizio	building	karretera	road
eliza	church	leku	place
enparantza	square	mendi	mountain(s)
erreka	stream	plaza	plaza, square
etxe	house	semasoro	traffic lights
gasolindegí	petrol station	taberna	bar
geltoki	railway or coach station	toki	place, spot
hondartza	beach	trenbide	railway line
		zubi	bridge

Key verbs are:

joan	go	igo	go up
segi	carry on	jaitsi	go down
pasatu	go past	eman buelta	turn around
hartu	take		

and these *adverbs* may come in handy:

aurrera	forward, ahead	gora	up
atzera	back	behera	down
zuzen	straight	gertu	near
ezkerretara	(to the) left	urruti	far
eskubitara	(to the) right		

Strategies for communication

Giving directions

Learn these sentences:

Segi aurrera.	Continue forward (= Keep going).
Lehenengo kalean ezkerretara.	At the first street (go) left.
Eskubi aldean dago.	It's on the right(-hand) side.

Note that Basques will often tell you to turn at the next 'street', rather than at the next corner. They may also mention whether you have to go uphill or downhill rather than left or right, so look at the preceding lists again and note the words that refer to these concepts.

Exercise 1 Make up a conversation in the street between yourself and somebody who asks you where the nearest bank (*kutxa*) in the neighbourhood is.

Letter

Naroa's reply

Vocabulary

axola	matter	handik	from there
azkenean	at last	hartu	take
bazatoz	you're coming	joan	go
behar dut	I have to	laister	soon
beharko duzu	you'll have to	musu	kiss
beraz	therefore, so	nahiko	quite
bukatu	finish	primeran pasatu	have a great time
ekain	June	problema	problem
epa!	hi!	-rik	any
etormi	come	uztail	July
ezin	cannot, can't	ze ondo!	that's great! super!
gertu	near, close	zoritzarrez	unfortunately

1994ko ekainaren 1a
Zarautz

Epa Elin:

Bazatuz aitzenau! Ze ondo! Ez dago
problemarik. Uztailaren 8an bukatuko dut ikastoben
baina ez du axoia. Primera gosatuko du.

Zoritzaretz lan egin behar dut eta erin mit joan
Bilbora. Beraz Bilbotik Dorostiarra autobusen joan
beharko duzu. Han hartu trena Zarautza. Gero etomi
ikastolera. Geltokitik uholiko gertu daez.

Husu bat eta laister arte!

Moroa.

Doing things with words

Telling people what to do

Study these instructions:

Hartu trena Zarautza.

Take the train to Zarautz.

Gero etorri ikastolara.

Then come to the ikastola

Segi aurrera.

Keep going.

Telling someone what to do ('Take the train ...', 'Come to the school' etc.) is easy in Basque because, as in English, the basic verb

form is also an imperative form: **Hartu ...**, **Etorri ...** etc. Some of these basic forms are given in the left-hand part of the tables on pages 35 and 52.

Exercise 2 Say in Basque:

- 1 Take my phone number.
- 2 Answer soon!
- 3 Go past the school and take the first street on the right.
- 4 Call (me)!
- 5 Here's your ticket.

Saying what you mean

'Have to'

Study these sentences:

Txartela erosi behar duzu. You have to buy a ticket.
Elinek Zarautza joan behar du. Elin has to go to Zarautz.

Another way to give an instruction is to tell someone what they *have to* do. The above examples show how to say 'have to' in Basque; it is similar to the expression for 'want to' but using **behar** instead of **nahi**:

	want (to)	have to
I	nahi dut	behar dut
you	nahi duzu	behar duzu
he/she/it	nahi du	behar du

Exercise 3 Can you find two sentences in Naroa's letter which explain what Naroa or Elin have to do?

Exercise 4 Now make up two Basque sentences about having to do something, and two more about wanting to do something.

Negative sentences

Study these examples:

Ez dakit.	I don't know.
Ez naiz hemengoa.	I'm not from here.
Ikastola ez dago urrutি.	The ikastola isn't far.

Notice that **ez** ‘not’ is placed in front of the verb to make it negative, and that a negated verb is rarely placed at the end of the sentence (unlike a positive verb).

Exercise 5 Which of the following sentences on the right might you use to say the following?

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 someone isn't from here | (a) Taberna ez dago gertu. |
| 2 something isn't near | (b) Nere ama ez da hemengoa. |
| 3 you don't speak the language | (c) Ez dakit euskaraz. |

When the verb contains an auxiliary (**naiz**, **dut** etc.), **ez** must always be placed in front of the auxiliary, which then *precedes* the main verb. For example, **joango naiz** ‘I shall go’ becomes **ez naiz joango** ‘I shan’t go’.

Exercise 6 Make these sentences negative:

- 1 Amerikanoa naiz.
- 2 Irlandara joan nahi dut.
- 3 Zarautzen bizi naiz.
- 4 Ikastolara etorri behar duzu.

‘Can’t’

Now look at this sentence:

Ezin naiz joan Bilbora. I can't go to Bilbao.

There is a special word for ‘can’t’, **ezin**. Like **ez**, it is placed in front of a verb or auxiliary, which is rarely placed at the end of the sentence. The verb is in the basic form. Be sure to learn this useful construction.

Exercise 7 Say that you can't do these things (make sure you choose the right auxiliary in each case):

- 1 ateria kalera
- 2 joan Donostiara
- 3 lan egin bihar
- 4 hitzegin orain

Dialogue 2

At the ikastola

Elin reaches the school and meets Naroa

ELIN: Barkatu, Naroa hemen al dago?

SECRETARY: Naroa, ingles irakaslea?

ELIN: Bai.

SECRETARY: Irakasle gelan dago. Oraintxe deituko diot. Nor zara?

ELIN: Elin.

SECRETARY: Nola?

ELIN: Elin.

SECRETARY: A, zu zara bere lagun galesa? Itxoin pixka bat.

ELIN: Bai.

(*A few minutes later.*)

NAROA: Epa Elin! Iritsi zara! Ongi etorri Euskal Herri!

ELIN: Kaixo Naroa! Zer moduz?

NAROA: Zer moduz bidaia? Nekatuta zaude?

ELIN: Pixka bat.

NAROA: Ba oraintxe bertan nere etxera joango gara. Dutxatu, zerbait jan eta ohera. Ados?

ELIN: Primeran!

Vocabulary

ados?	agreed? all right?
al	question marker (see page 10)
bidaia	trip, journey
deituko diot	I'll call her
dutxatu	have a shower
gela	room
irakasle	teacher
irakasle gela	teachers' room
iritxi zara!	you've arrived! you're here!
itxoin/itxaron	wait
jan	eat
joango gara	we'll go
nola?	what? what did you say? pardon?
ohe	bed
ongi etorri!	welcome!

oraintxe	right now, straight away
oraintxe bertan	this very minute
pixka bat	a bit, a little, a while
primeran!	perfect! great!
zerbait	something

Strategies for communication

Finding out who someone is

Study this exchange:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A: Nor zara? | Who are you? |
| B: Elin. | Elin. |
| A: A, zu zara Naroaren laguna! | Ah, (so) you're Naroa's friend! |

Note that it is not considered rude in Basque to ask someone 'Who are you?' In English we should probably phrase the question differently, e.g. 'What's your name, please?'

Exercise 8 A receptionist has the following list of famous people expected at a convention in Zarautz. Play the part of the receptionist welcoming each person as they arrive. Follow this model:

RECEPTIONIST: **Nor zara?**

TOM JONES: **Tom Jones.**

RECEPTIONIST: **A, zu zara Tom Jones kantaria! Ongi etorri Zarautza!**

Refer to page 29 for a list of names of professions.

- 1 Benito Lertxundi – singer
- 2 Carlos Garaikoetxea – politician
- 3 Jose Auxtin Arrieta – writer
- 4 Miren Azkarate – professor
- 5 Elin Davies – reporter

Getting to speak to someone

Memorize this short exchange:

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| A: Barkatu, Naroa hemen al dago? | Excuse me, is Naroa here? |
| B: Irakasle gelan dago. | She's in the teachers' room. |
| Oraintxe deituko diot. | I'll call her. |
| Itxoin pixka bat. | Just a minute. |
| A: Bai. | Okay. |

Exercise 9 Fill in the blanks in this conversation, using models you have learnt:

You: _____, Elin _____?

SECRETARY: Bai, bulegoan (in the office) dago. Oraintxe deituko diot. _____?

You: _____.

SECRETARY: _____ pixka bat.

You: _____.

Making sure you understand

Exercise 10  Which of the following sentences on the right might you use to mean the following?

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1 you haven't understood | (a) Esan berriro mesedez. |
| 2 you want someone to speak slowly | (b) Barkatu, ez dut ulertu. |
| 3 you want someone to repeat something | (c) Nola? Zer? |
| | (d) Hitzegin poliki, mesedez. |

(berriro 'again', esan 'say', poliki 'slowly', ulertu 'understand')

It is also useful to know the names of the letters of the alphabet in case you need to spell something out:

a (A)	be (B)	ze (C)	de (D)
e (E)	efe (F)	ge (G)	hatxe (H)
i (I)	jota (J)	ka (K)	ele (L)
eme (M)	ene (N)	eñe (Ñ)	o (O)
pe (P)	ku (Q)	erre (R)	ese (S)
te (T)	u (U)	uve (V)	
uve bikoitza/uve doble (W)		ekis or ixa	(X)
i greko/i griega (Y)		zeta	(Z)

Note that c, q, v, w and y are not normally used in Basque words.

Exercise 11 Practise spelling out your name, the town where you live etc.

Saying what you mean

Talking about 'us'

Study these sentences:

Nere etxera joango gara.	We'll go to my house.
Hitzegingo dugu.	We'll talk.
Hemen gaude.	Here we are.

By changing the z of 'you' to a g we get the Basque for 'we':

zu or zuk	you
gu or guk	we

We can get first-person-plural verb forms by a similar change, so:

zara	you are	→	gara	we are
bizi zara	you live	→	bizi gara	we live
joango zara	you'll go	→	joango gara	we'll go
zaude	you are	→	gaude	we are
nahi duzu	you want	→	nahi dugu	we want
behar duzu	you have to	→	behar dugu	we have to
deituko duzu	you'll call	→	deituko dugu	we'll call

Exercise 12 Say in Basque:

- 1 We are tired.
- 2 We'll soon be there. (*use iritsi*)
- 3 We'll have a great time.

Months and dates

Learn to at least recognize the names of the months:

January	urtarril	in January	urtarrilean
February	otsail		otsailean
March	martxo		martxoan
April	april		apirilean
May	maiatz		maiatzean
June	ekain		ekainean
July	uztail		uztailean
August	abuztu		abuztuan
September	irail		irailean
October	urri		urrian
November	azaro		azaroan
December	abendu		abenduan

When named, the months take an -a: **urtarrila**, etc.

Four of the names are related to the English names: have you spotted them? **Abendua** is related to *Advent*. The other names are of Basque origin; most end in -il meaning ‘month’. **Otsail** is ‘wolf-month’, for example (**otso** ‘wolf’). **Urri** means ‘scarcity’, and **azaro** is ‘cabbage (aza) season (aro)’. Notice that names of months are not capitalized.

The usual word for ‘month’ is **hilabete**, literally ‘full-month’ or ‘full-moon’; and the ‘moon’ is called **ilargi(a)** (compare **argi** ‘light’).

The commonest construction for giving a date means, literally, ‘the eight of August’ (for example) but the Basque way to express this is ‘August’s eight’: **abuztuaren zortzia**. We place -aren (equivalent to English ‘s) after the month, and -a after the number at the end. If, however, we are saying ‘on the eighth of August’, then the ending is -an or -ean instead: **abuztuaren zortzian**.

Dates are written as follows:

abuztuaren 8a	the 8th of August
abuztuaren 8an	on the 8th of August

Years are referred to by the appropriate four-digit number with similar suffixes, thus **1994a** ‘1994’; **1994an** ‘in 1994’. To say this, the full number is used (in thousands, hundreds, tens and digits), e.g. **mila bederatzirehun eta laurogeita hamalaua(n)**. Thankfully, you can also say **laurogeita hamalauan** ‘in ninety-four’.

When the full date is given, the order is year–month–day, and the year then has the suffix -(e)ko:

1994ko abuztuaren 8a(n) ‘(on) the 8th of August, 1994’

Exercise 13 How do you write these dates in Basque?

- 1 your birthday
- 2 Christmas Eve

You haven’t learnt how to say all the numbers yet; if you are impatient to know, look ahead to the next unit!

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Basic verb forms

Study this table:

joan	go	joango (naiz) (I) shall go	joaten (naiz) (I) go
egin	make	egingo (dut) (I) shall make	egiten (dut) (I) make
itxoin	wait	itxoingo (dut)	itxoiten (dut)
atera	leave	aterako (naiz)	ateratzen (naiz)
ikasi	learn	ikasiko (dut)	ikasten (dut)
erosi	buy	erosiko (dut)	erosten (dut)
iritsi	arrive	iritsiko (naiz)	iristen (naiz)
deitu	call	deituko (dut)	deitzen (dut)
hartu	take	hartuko (dut)	hartzen (dut)
dutxatu	shower	dutxatuko (naiz)	dutxatzten (naiz)

The most basic form of each verb is the one that can be used as an imperative and with **nahi** ‘want to’, **behar** ‘have to’ and **ezin** ‘cannot’. Some examples are given in the left-hand column. The form used to make the future tense, which we studied in Unit 2, ends in **-ko** or **-go**, as in the middle column. The forms shown in the right-hand column are the ones used in a kind of present tense that you will learn more about in the next unit; these end in **-tzen** or **-ten**.

Notice that the basic forms (on the left) can be divided into four types with characteristic endings, namely **-n**, no ending, **-i** and **-tu** respectively. Instead of **-tu** we have **-du** when the preceding letter is **n** or **I**, e.g. **bazkaldu** ‘have lunch’, **kendu** ‘take away’.

To get the present-tense form on the right, for the last two types of verb we must remove the ending **-i** or **-tu/-du** before adding **-tzen** or **-ten**; for the first type we remove the **-n** before adding **-ten**.

Exercise 14 Give the future and present forms of: **joan**, **egin**, **hitzegin**, **ikusi**, **deitu**, **bazkaldu**.

Exercise 15 Supply the correct forms (present or future) of the verbs shown for this dialogue:

- A: Zer _____ (egin) duzu bihar?
- B: Astelehenetan (*on Mondays*) normalean lanera _____ (joan) naiz baina bihar ez naiz _____ (joan).
- A: Orduan (*then*) zer _____ (egin) duzu?
- B: Lagunekin (*with my friends*) _____ (hitzegin) dut eta gero _____ (ikusi) dugu.

Talking about . . .

Youself

If someone asks you **Nola duzu izena?** ('What's your name?') or **Nola deitzen zara?** ('What are you called?'), you may just give your **izena** ('first name'), or perhaps both your **izena** and your **abizena** ('surname'), depending on the circumstances. If you are asked for your **abizenak** (in the plural), this is because in Spain people officially use two, those of their father and mother.

In formal contexts you might be addressed as **Anderson jauna** (Mr A.), **McDonald andrea** (Mrs McD.), or **Jones andereñoa** (Miss J.) – with the title always following the name – but Basques do not often use such terms of address, and one certainly never would in reference to oneself. The unaccompanied term **jauna** is occasionally used like our 'sir', but this usage is as often as not intended humorously or facetiously, so avoid it. In a religious context, **Jauna** is 'Lord'.

If called upon to prove your identity, you will need to produce your **pasaportea**, given that, as a foreign national, you have not got a **nortasun agiria** (also **NAN**), that is, an official identity card. It is a good idea to know your **pasaporte zenbakia** by heart (**zenbaki** 'number').

Someone may want to know your **helbidea** ('address') or your **telefono zenbakia**. You have already learnt how to say phone numbers and to answer the question **Non bizi zara?**; for Basque addresses see Unit 12.

It is just possible that you might be asked, or want to ask someone else, **Zenbat urte dituzu?** ('How old are you?'). If you don't want to give away your **adina** ('age'), at this point you can honestly answer that you haven't learnt all the numbers yet – or else you can reply **Nik hamar urte ditut; eta zuk?**

If things are getting personal, the next question may be **Ezkonduta zaude?** 'Are you married?'; besides just being or not

being ezkonduta, other possible variations include dibortziatua, or alarguna ('a widow(er)'). Then there may be questions about your emaztea ('wife'), senarra ('husband'), or familia.

The one thing you can be sure of being asked is Nongoa zara?, as it will be obvious that you are not hemengoa ('from here'). You may as well rehearse the answer to that question ahead of time (see Unit 1 if necessary).

Exercise 16 (review) Fill in the blanks from memory:

1994ko ekainaren 1a

Zarautz

Kaixo Elin!

Batzoratzen! Ez _____ problemarik.

Uztailaren 8an bukatuko _____ ikastola baina et

du orba. Primeran paratuho _____.

Zontxarretean egin behar _____ eta ezin
_____ joan Biebora zure bila. Beraz Bilbotik

Donañiara autobusean joan beharko _____.

Husu bat eta guister arte.

Nbroa

4 Herria ikusten

Seeing the town

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- plural verb forms
- word formation

Saying what you mean

- singular and plural nouns
- this one, that one, or which one?
- describing
- saying what there is
- plural qualified nouns
- the compound present tense
- numbers (2)

Doing things with words

- agreeing about what to do

Talking about ...

- the town
- banks and money

Dialogue 1

A walk through the town

Naroa shows Elin around Zarautz

ELIN: Non bizi zara?

NAROA: Alde zaharrean. Hondartzatik joango gara.

ELIN: Oso ondo.

(Ten minutes later.)

NAROA: Hondartzara iritsi gara.

ELIN: Oso luzea da! Zein da herri hori, hor urrutian?

NAROA: Getaria. Herri arrantzalea da.

(After walking along the beach they reach the centre of town.)

NAROA: Hau da alde zaharra. Hemen azoka, kutxak, tabernak eta denda handiak daude. Hor dago enparantza nagusia. Ikusten al duzu eliza bat han aurtean?

ELIN: Bai.

NAROA: Zaharra eta polita da. Ondoan parke eder bat dago.

Vocabulary

alde	side, part, region	ikusten duzu	(do) you see
alde zaharra	the old part of the town	kutxa	bank
arrantzale	fisherman	luze	long
herri arrantzale	fishing village	nagusi	chief, main, principal, biggest
aurtean	in front, opposite	ondo!	good! great!
azoka	market	ondoan	next to (it)
denda	shop	parke	park
eder	beautiful	taberna	bar
eliza	church	-tik	from, through, along
enparantza	square	urrutian	in the distance
han	over there	zahar	old
hemen	here	zein	which? which one? what?
hor	there		

Saying what you mean

Singular and plural nouns

Study this table:

tren	train	trena	a/the train	trenak	(the) trains
autobus	bus	autobusa		autobusak	
kale	street	kalea		kaleak	
geltoki	station	geltokia		geltokiak	
semaforo	traffic light	semaforoa		semaforoak	
portu	harbour	portua		portuak	

taberna	bar	taberna	a/the bar	tabernak (the) bars
denda	shop	denda		dendak
ikastola	school	ikastola		ikastolak
eliza	church	eliza		elizak
hondartza	beach	hondartza		hondartzak

Each noun in Basque possesses a basic form, which may end in a consonant or in any vowel. This is the form of the noun that is given in dictionaries and word lists. For most *proper* names (capitalized names of people, places etc.) it is also the form of the word commonly used, e.g. **Xabier, Naroa, Elin, Zarautz, Bilbo, Donostia** etc.

Common nouns, however, such as those in the above table, most often take a suffix called an *article*. Although the Basque article sometimes can be translated by the English *the*, this is but an inexact correspondence.

The article has a singular form **-a** and a plural form **-ak**, which are attached to the noun's basic form, as in the first half of the table. With nouns whose basic form itself ends in an **a**, this is dropped when the article is added, as in the second half.

Remember that a final **r** is doubled when a suffix beginning with a vowel is attached: thus **baserritar** 'farmer' has the forms **base-rritarra, baserritarrak**. There are very few exceptions indeed to this rule, but an important one to remember is **ur** 'water' which with the article is **ura**.

When is the article used with a noun? So often, in fact, that it is easier to state when the article is *not* used! Usually it is not used with numerals, e.g. **bi kafesne** 'two coffees with milk'. This also applies to the numeral 'one', **bat**, which *follows* the noun: **kafesne bat**.

Exercise 1 Say in Basque, using the article:

station, village, street, train, aeroplane, ticket, telephone, work
 beach, journey, problem, television, mother, father
 traffic lights, buses, kisses, friends
 shops, houses, hugs, pesetas

Exercise 2 Say in Basque, using no article:

Bilbao, London, England, Gipuzkoa, Leitza
 Xabier, Naroa, Elin

two coffees, three wines, one coke, four beers
 five houses, a/one house, a/one shop, ten bars, how many
 churches?

This one, that one or which one?

Study these sentences and exchanges:

Tren hau zaharra da.

This train is old.

Kale hau zaharra da.

This street is old.

Eliza hau zaharra da.

This church is old.

Zein autobus da?

Which bus is it?

Zein irakasle da?

Which teacher is she/he/it?

Zein taberna da?

Which bar is it?

A: Zein da herri hori?

What is that town?

B: Herri hori Getaria da.

That town is Getaria.

A: Zein da taberna hori?

Which is that bar?

B: Taberna hori 'Zelaitxo' da. That bar is the 'Zelaitxo'.

When the Basque words for 'this' (hau), 'that' (hori and hura) and 'which?' (zein) are used with a noun, no article is used. In grammars these words are called determiners. Notice that taberna ends in an a; 'tabern' is thus an impossible form. Note also that zein precedes a noun, whereas the demonstratives ('this' and 'that') follow.

Exercise 3 Translate into Basque.

A: (looking at a picture) Which beach is this?

B: This beach is Ondarreta, in San Sebastian.

A: Is that very far away?

B: No, that isn't very far away. 10 km (kilometro).

Describing

Study these sentences:

Elin galesa da.

Elin is Welsh.

Zarauzko hondartza luzea da.

Zarautz's beach is long.

Eliza hau zaharra da.

This church is old.

Parke hau ederra da.

This park is beautiful.

Notice that a predicate adjective (gales, luze etc.), surprisingly, takes an article!

Exercise 4 Using the above dialogue, describe the places by making sentences as in the example:

- 1 Zarauzko hondartza: Zarauzko hondartza luzea da.
- 2 Denda hori
- 3 Parkea
- 4 Eliza

Now study these phrases:

alde zaharra	the/an old district
parke ederra	the/a beautiful park
eliza txikia	the/a small church
herri arrantzalea	the/a fishing village
enparantza nagusia	the main square
alde zahar bat	an/one old district
parke eder bat	a/one beautiful park
eliza txiki bat	a/one small church
herri arrantzale bat	a/one fishing village
enparantza nagusi bat	a/one main square

Attributive adjectives in English precede the noun (*beautiful park*) but in Basque they follow it (*parke eder*). Apart from this, note where the article -a and the numeral bat are placed: not after the noun but after the adjective. The rule is that they are placed at the end of the noun phrase.

Exercise 5 Reread the dialogue, looking carefully at how the above phrases are used.

With numerals above ‘one’, and zein ‘which’, the rule given earlier is followed, e.g. **bi parke eder** ‘two beautiful parks’, **zein eliza txiki?** ‘which small church?’.

Doing things with words

Agreeing about what to do

Study these exchanges:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| A: Hondartzatik joango gara. | We'll go via the beach. |
| B: Oso ondo. | Very well./Fine. |
| A: Itxoin pixka bat. | Wait a moment. |

B: Bai.	Okay.
A: Nere etxera joango gara.	We'll go to my house.
Ados?	Agreed?/All right?
B: Primeran!	Great!/Perfect!

Which of the above is a suggestion? Which is a request?

Bai!, **ondo!** or **oso ondo!**, **bale!**, **konforme!** ‘agreed’, **primeran!** and **ederki!** ‘fine’ can all be used to express that you accept or agree with a suggestion or a request.

Eastern Basques use **ongi** instead of **ondo**; western Basques use **ederto** instead of **ederki**.

Exercise 6 Agree with these suggestions. Try to convey your meaning using different forms.

- 1 Oporretan Hawaii-ra joango gara.
- 2 Autobusean joango gara nere etxera?
- 3 Zazpiretan Txiki-Polit taberman, ados?

Talking about . . .

The town

Herri usually refers to a village or a small town, **hiri** to a large town or a city; if in doubt, use **herri**. **Hiriak** and most **herriak** consist of a number of **auzoak** ('neighbourhoods or districts'); all except the smallest villages also have a centre (**zentrua**) which generally comprises an older section (**the alde zaharra**) and a newer part. Typically, most **tabernak** will be in the **alde zaharra** but the **denda handiak** are probably elsewhere.

To find your way to the centre of a very small town or village, a good trick is to head for the church (**eliza**) which will usually be the most noticeable landmark and be centrally located, with an adjoining **plaza** somewhere in the **alde zaharra** (if the town is big enough to have one). An **enparantza** is a special kind of central **plaza**, square or oblong in shape with columns along each side. A good specimen is the **Konstituzio Enparantza** in Donostia (*Plaza de la Constitución* in Spanish).

There may be an **azoka** or **merkatua** ('market'); some open daily, others certain days of the week. There will be **dendak**, of course, and an increasing number of **supermerkatuak** are to be

found, although mostly of modest proportions by modern British standards.

Larger towns have parks (**parkeak**) or, better yet, a beach (**hondartza**) with a promenade (**pasealekua**). There may also be a **portua** or **kaia** ('a small harbour') where you can stroll. If worst comes to worst, there might at least be an **ibaia** ('river') or **erreka** ('stream')!

Other typical landmarks for larger towns include the **ospitalea** ('hospital'), the **anbulategia** ('clinic'), the **komisaldegia** ('police station'), the **gasolindegia** ('petrol station'), and one or more **zineak** ('cinemas').

In towns the **kanposantua** ('cemetery') may be on the outskirts, perhaps up on a hill (**mendi**), while in villages it sometimes adjoins the **eliza**.

Dialogue 2

A visit to a bank

Elin changes some money

ELIN: Han badago kutxa bat. Sartuko naiz ...

(*In the bank.*)

Libra esterlinak aldatu nahi ditut. Zein da kanbioa?

BANK CLERK: 190 (ehun eta laurogeita hamar) pezeta.

ELIN: Ze komisio hartzen duzue?

BANK CLERK: Ehuneko hirua.

ELIN: Ondo. Hirurehun libra aldatuko ditut.

BANK CLERK: Ekarri pasaportea, mesedesz.

Bilete handiak ala txikiak nahi dituzu?

ELIN: Berdin zait.

BANK CLERK: 55.290 (berrogeita hamabost mila berrehun eta laurogeita hamar) pezeta.

(*Counting out the money.*)

10 (hamar), 20 (hogei), 25 (hogeita bost), 30 (hogeita hamar), 35 (hogeita hamabost), 40 (berrogei), 45 (berrogeita bost), 50 (berrogeita hamar), 52 (berrogeita hamabi), 54 (berrogeita hamalau), 55 (berrogeita hamabost), 290 (berrehun eta laurogeita hamar) pezeta. Sinatu hemen, mesedesz.

ELIN: Mila esker. Agur.

BANK CLERK: Bai, agur.

Vocabulary

aldatu	change, exchange
aldatuko ditut	I'll change (<i>plural object</i>)
badago	there is
berdin zait!	I don't mind! I'm not bothered! it makes no difference!
berrogei	forty
bilete	ticket, banknote
ehuneko	per cent
ehuneko hiru	three per cent
ekarri	give me! let me have! (<i>lit. bring!</i>)
esterlin	stirling
hamabost	fifteen
hogeい	twenty
kanbio	exchange rate
komisio	commission
laurogei	eighty
libra	pound
mila	thousand; one thousand
mila esker!	thank you very much! (<i>lit. 'a thousand thanks'</i>)
milako	thousand-peseta note (<i>approximately £5</i>)
nahi ditut	I want (<i>plural object</i>)
nahi dituzu	(do) you want (<i>plural object</i>)
pasaporte	passport
sartu	go in, enter
sinatu	sign
txiki	small, little

Saying what you mean

Saying what there is

Study these sentences:

Ondoan badago parke eder bat. } Next to it there is a lovely
Ondoan, parke eder bat dago. } park.

Hemen bi kutxa daude. } There are two banks here.
Hemen badaude bi kutxa. }

To express existence ('there is'), one of the verbs 'to be' is used. The construction has two variants, in one of which 'is' is preceded

by the prefix **ba-** while in the other variation of this construction **ba-** does not appear. When **ba-** is absent, the noun phrase whose existence is asserted must be immediately followed by **dago**. The verb agrees in number, hence ‘there are’ is **(ba)daude**.

Exercise 7 Describe your own town (**zure herria**) or your neighbourhood (**zure auzoa**) using Dialogue 1 as a general guide and telling what there is there.

Plural qualified nouns

Study these phrases:

kale luzeak	long streets
autobus zaharrak	old buses
bilete handiak	large banknotes
denda handiak	large shops
libra esterlinak	pounds sterling

Compare the use of attributive adjectives in singular noun phrases (e.g. **eliza txikia**). In plural noun phrases there is the same structure, but the article at the end is the plural **-ak**.

Exercise 8 Translate into Basque.

- 1 Let me have your old coins (**txanpon**).
- 2 I want to change (some) Irish (**irlandes**) pounds.
- 3 They are fine parks.

The compound present tense

Study these sentences:

Xabierrek kazetaritza ikasten du.	Xabier studies journalism.
Zuk zer egiten duzu?	What do you do?
Ikusten al duzu eliza bat han aurrean.	Do you see a church over there opposite?
Ze komisio hartzen duzue?	What commission do you take?

Review the basic verb forms on page 52. Forms in **-tzen** or **-ten** are used to form a present tense which, like the English present simple (*Xabier studies ...*, *Do you see ...*), expresses either a general or a habitual act.

Numbers (2)



Have you figured out how two-digit numbers are expressed in Basque yet? If not, take another look at the conversation in the bank. Only the following new words are involved, and these are quite easy if you learnt the numbers given in Unit 2:

11	hamaika	20	hogei
12	hamabi	40	berrogei
13	hamahiru	60	hirurogei
14	hamalau	80	laurogei
15	hamabost		
16	hamasei		
17	hamazazpi		
18	hemezortzi or hamazortzi		
19	hemeretzi		

The numbers from twelve to eighteen clearly mean 'ten-two', 'ten-three' etc. (with **hamar** 'ten' shortened to **hama-**). The words for 'sixty' and 'eighty' mean 'three-twenties' and 'four-twenties'. The prefix **berr-** means 'double' in both **berrehun** 'two hundred' (2×100) and **berrogei** (2×20).

Multiples of a thousand are: **2.000 bi mila**, **3.000 hiru mila**, **15.000 hamabost mila** etc. Notice that a dot is used rather than a comma. On the other hand, in decimals a comma is used rather than a dot: **3,5 hiru koma bost** = 3.5, i.e. $3\frac{1}{2}$! For one thousand, just **mila** is used.

Exercise 9 Read these numbers out loud in Basque: 7, 14, 21, 28; 9, 18, 27; 4, 8, 12, 16, 20, 24; 35, 40, 45, 50, 55; 60, 70, 80, 90, 100.

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Plural verb forms

Notice the verb forms in these sentences:

Autobusak zaharrak dira.	The buses are old.
Non daude zure lagunak?	Where are your friends?
Hemen komisioa hartzen dute.	They take commission here.
Kazetariak al zarete?	Are you journalists?

Nekatuta al zaudete?
Zer nahi duzue?

Are you (*plural*) tired?
What do you (*people*) want?

Hirurehun libra aldatuko ditut. I'll change £300.

When a Basque verb (or auxiliary) has a plural subject or a plural object, it goes into a special form. We shall note three different types of plural verb form.

First, you must learn the forms used when the subject is third-person plural (*they*):

Third-person singular

da	is
dago	is
du	(<i>transitive auxiliary</i>)
dauka	has

Third-person plural

dira	are
daude	are
dute	(<i>transitive auxiliary</i>)
daukate	have

Notice that the transitive plural forms, **dute** and **daukate**, are formed with the suffix **-te**; and also the resemblance between **daude** 'they are' and **gaude** 'we are'.

Next, there are special forms for 'you' when referring to more than one person (i.e. **zuek** rather than **zu** 'you'). You already know that **duzue** is the plural form corresponding to **duzu**. In intransitive 'you' verb forms, the plural suffix is **-te**:

Second-person singular

zara	you are
zaude	you are
duzu	(<i>transitive auxiliary</i>)
daukazu	you have

Second-person plural

zarete	you are
zaudete	you are
duzue	(<i>transitive auxiliary</i>)
daukazue	you have

Lastly, when a transitive verb has a *plural object* it agrees with it in number too! Note these forms:

Singular-object auxiliary

dut	I ...
duzu	you ...
du	he/she/it ...

Plural-object auxiliary

ditut	I ...
dituzu	you ...
ditu	he/she/it ...

The verb can even agree in number with both subject and object, e.g. **Dolarrak hartzen dituzue?** 'Do you (*plural*) take dollars (*plural*)?'

Exercise 10 Find examples of plural verb forms in the above dialogue.

Talking about . . .

Banks and money

A distinction is made between banks (**bankuak**) and savings banks (**kutxak**), but in most places either will change (**aldatu**) your money (**dirua**), cheques (**txekeak**) or traveller's cheques (usually called **traveller-ak**). Exchange bureaux will display a sign saying **trukea** and no doubt its translation in Spanish (**cambio**), French (**change**) and English (**exchange**). Here is some additional vocabulary:

txanpon	coin	dolar	dollar
bilete	note	kontu	account; bill
kanbio	exchange (rate)	txartel	card; ticket
ehuneko	per cent	ordaindu	pay
portzeniaia	percentage	kobratu	charge
pezeta	peseta	kontatu	count
libera	(French) franc	bueltak or	change (i.e.
libra (esterlina)	pound (stirling)	kanbioak	money returned)

Street signs

Elin and Naroa have been walking around Zarautz. Most street signs are in Basque, not Spanish. Here are some of them: can you guess their meanings? Which ones might you need to recognize?

Announcing various services:

TREN GELTOKIA

telefona

UDALTZAINGOA

ertzaintza

Posta eta Telegrafoak

udaletxea

komunak

KUTXA

**ENPLEGU
BULEGOA**

Of general interest:

GURUTZE GORRIA

parroquia

komun eta dutxa publikoak

LARRIALDIAK

hortz klinika

ambulategia

Of interest to tourists:

hondartza

turismo bulegoa

museoa

igerilekua

udal polikiroldegia

golf-a

Inside buildings:

Sarrera

Irteera

PRIBATUA

bultza

Sarrera Debekatua

BULEGOAK

Informazioa

Harrera

Ez erre!

Where would you expect to see these?

Azoka plaza

Iurpeko pasagunea

Enparantza zaharra

Araba kalea

**IBILGAILU
IRTEERA**

*

**Zarauzko
Udala**

MARGOTU BERRIA!

*aparkaleku
publikoa*

**IRTEERA
GABEKO
KALEA**

Vocabulary

anbulategi	clinic, medical centre	informazio irteera	information exit, way out
aparkaleku	car park, parking place	komun larrialdi	toilet emergency
berri	new(ly)	lurpeko	underground
bulego	office	margotu	paint(ed)
bultza(tu)	push	museo	museum
debekatu	forbidden, prohibited, not allowed	parroquia	parish (church)
		pasagune (poli)kiroldegi	passage sports centre
dutxa	shower	posta	post
enplegu	employment	pribatu	private
erre	smoke	publiko	public
ertzaintza	Basque police	sarrera	entrance, entry
gabe	without	turismo	tourism
gorri	red	udal	municipality, municipal, council
gurutze	cross		
harrera	reception		
hortz	tooth	udaletxe	town hall
ibilgailu	vehicle	udaltzaingoa	municipal police
igerileku	swimming pool		

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Word formation

Do not try to memorize the whole of the preceding vocabulary. Study it, however, to see how Basque words are formed.

Exercise 11 Some are related to words you know in English: which ones are they?

Exercise 12 Some are formed by joining two words. What compounds are formed from the following? Check on their meanings.

aparka(tu) to park + leku place

igeri swim + leku place

larri critical + aldi period, time

udal municipal, council + etxe house, building

Exercise 13 Notice how the suffix -era has been used to form the next three words: what do they mean?

sar(tu) enter → sarrera

irte(n) go out → irteera

har(tu) receive, take → harrrera

Exercise 14 Two compound words are formed from the following words and suffixes: can you find and analyse them?

ibili	move about
kirolak	sports
-tegi/-degi	place
-gailu	device

5 Etxean

At home

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- further auxiliary forms (preview)

Saying what you mean

- emphasizing qualities
- saying what you've got
- 'with'
- the present continuous tense
- days of the week

Doing things with words

- saying what you like
- expressing surprise
- finding out someone's wishes or intentions
- stating your own wishes or intentions

Talking about ...

- the home

Language and life

- Basque-language media

Dialogue 1

In Naroa's flat

Naroa shows her flat to Elin

NAROA: Hemen daukazu sukaldia eta eskubitara jangela eta terraza.

ELIN: Zein ederrak!

NAROA: Bai, oso pozik nago etxearekin. Eta ondoan bainugela.

- ELIN:** Oso polita eta txukuna da.
- NAROA:** Gero hemen daude nere logela eta ... zurea.
- ELIN:** Ze handia! Gainera oso argitsua da.
- NAROA:** Bai.
- ELIN:** Oso etxe polita daukazu. Askotan gustatzen zait. Alokairu altua ordainduko duzu, ezta?
- NAROA:** 50.000 (berrogeita hamar mila) pezeta.
- ELIN:** Londresen ez daukagu horrelakorik!

Vocabulary

alokairu	rent, rental
altu	high
argitsu	bright
asko	a lot, very much, many
bainugela	bathroom
daukagu	we have
daukazu	you have
eder	beautiful, handsome, very nice, fine, large
etxe	house, home, flat
etxearekin	with the house
ezta?	right? isn't it? don't you? etc
gainera	what is more, and also, furthermore, on top of that
gustatzen zait	I like (it)
horrelakorik	anything like that
jangela	dining room
logela	bedroom
ordaindu	pay
ordainduko duzu	you will pay, you must pay
sukalde	kitchen
terraza	balcony, terrace
txukun	neat, tidy, clean
ze ... !	how ... !
zein ... !	how ... !
zurea	yours

Doing things with words

Saying what you like

Study these exchanges:

A: Hau da nere etxea.	This is my house/flat.
B: Gustatzen zait.	I like it.
or Asko gustatzen zait.	I like it very much.
or Polita da.	It's nice.
or Oso polita da.	It's very nice.
A: Zapata berriak erosi ditut.	I've bought some new shoes.
B: Gustatzen zaizkit.	I like them.
or Asko gustatzen zaizkit.	I like them very much.
or Politak dira.	They're nice.
or Oso politak dira.	They're very nice.

There are many ways to express that you like something. Notice the distinct singular and plural verb forms. **Gustatu** 'like' takes a new kind of auxiliary:

gustatzen zait	I like (it)
gustatzen zaizkit	I like (them)

Avoid using **gustatu** to say you like a person, unless you mean to say that you 'fancy' them! To say that someone is nice, use the adjective **jatorr**:

Elin (oso) jatorra da.

You can use other adjectives to express liking or approval, such as **goxo** 'sweet, delicious', **on** 'good' and others in the above vocabulary. Adjectives expressing disapproval include **txar** 'bad', **zikin** 'dirty' and **itsusi** 'ugly'.

Note this sentence in the dialogue:

Oso pozik nago etxearekin.

Exercise 1 Make remarks expressing admiration of your friend's home. You may use the above dialogue as a guide.

Expressing surprise

Study these exchanges:

- A: **Hemen dago zure gela.** Here is your room.
 B: **Ze handia!** How big!
- A: **Jangela eta terraza hor daude.** The dining room and the balcony are there
 B: **Zein ederrak!** They're enormous!

Either **ze ... !** or **zein ... !** can be used in such exclamations. The adjective takes the article agreeing in number with the noun phrase referred to.

Exercise 2 Check that you know the meanings of these words:

polit	itsusi	zahar	berri
handi	txiki	jator	luze
txukun	zikin	argitsu	eder
urruti	gertu		

Then express your surprise in these exchanges, using adjectives:

1 NAROA: **Hemen dago Zarauzko geltokia ...**

You: _____

2 NAROA: **Hor daukazu zure logela ...**

You: _____

3 NAROA: **Nor da hori?**

ELIN: **Xabier, lagun bat.**

NAROA: _____

Saying what you mean

Emphasizing qualities

Study these sentences:

- Bainugela oso polita da.** The bathroom is very nice.
Oso pozik nago etxearekin. I'm very happy with the house.
Oso etxe polita daukazu. You have a very pretty house.
Alokairu oso altua ordaintzen dugu. We pay a very high rent.

Oso 'very' precedes the word it intensifies, but notice in the last two examples that there are two possible word orders for modifying an attributive adjective.

Still another way to intensify the meaning of an adjective is by repeating it, e.g.

Herri hau polit-polita da. This town is really nice.

Exercise 3 Fill in the blanks and check against the dialogue afterwards:

NAROA: Hemen daukazu sukaldea eta eskubitara jangela eta terraza.

ELIN: _____!

NAROA: Bai, _____ nago etxearekin. Eta ondoan bainugela.

ELIN: _____ polita eta txukuna da.

NAROA: Gero hemen daude nere logela eta ... zurea.

ELIN: _____! Gainera _____ argitsua da.

NAROA: Bai.

ELIN: _____ daukazu. _____ gustatzen zait.

Saying what you've got

Study these sentences:

Zarautzek hondartza dauka. Zarautz has a beach.

Oso etxe polita daukazu. You have a very pretty house.

Hemen daukazu sukaldea. Here you have the kitchen.

Londresen ez daukagu horrelakorik! In London we haven't got anything like that!

Londresen lagunak dauzkat. I have some friends in London.

There are two verbs 'to have' in Basque. One of them you have already met in the guise of an auxiliary: **dut**, **duzu** etc.:

Lan asko dut. I have a lot of work.

Zer duzu? What's the matter? (lit. 'What have you got?')

Badugu problema txiki bat. We have a little problem.

Here the **ba-** prefix appears, as in **badago** 'there is'. Note the plural-object form:

Lagunak ditugu hemen. We have friends here.

In the Gipuzkoan and Bizkaian dialects, you will often hear the forms of another verb 'to have', **eduki**, which are as follows:

Singular object

'I have (it)' etc.
daukat
daukazu
dauka
daukagu
daukazue
daukate

Plural object

'I have (them)' etc.
dauzkat
dauzkazu
dauzka
dauzkagu
dauzkazue
danzkate

Exercise 4 Show a friend around your home, talking about what you have got. Remember to use the plural-object forms when necessary! The vocabulary list in the following section may also be useful.

Talking about . . .

The home

Here is a fuller list of vocabulary associated with the home, to learn or refer to as needed:

General

etxe	house, home
pisu	flat; floor, storey
baserri	farm, farmhouse
hotel/ostatu	hotel
pentsio	lodging house

Rooms

gela/habitazio	room
egongela/sala	living room
logela	bedroom
sukalde	kitchen
jangela	dining room
bainugela	bathroom
komun	toilet
ate	door
giltza	key
leiho	window
terraza/balkoi	balcony

Furniture

ohe	bed
armario	wardrobe, cupboard
mahai	table
aulki	chair
sofa	sofa

Miscellaneous

argi	light
lanpara	lamp
telefono	telephone
telebista	television
irratia	radio
berogailu	heater
kalefazio	heating

eskailera	stairs, staircase
igogailu	lift
buzoi	letter-box

Verbs

erosi	buy
alokatu	rent, let

Dialogue 2 **In the kitchen**

Naroa offers Elin something to eat and they discuss tomorrow's plans

NAROA: Zerbait jan nahi al duzu?

ELIN: Gustora hartuko nuke entsalada bat, eta kitto. Ez daukat goserik.

NAROA: Ederki. Zer egin nahi zenuke bihar?

ELIN: Eguraldi ona badago, hondartzara joan nahi nuke.

NAROA: Oso ideia ona iruditzen zait.

ELIN: Zoritzarrez zu ezin zara etorri. Lanera joan behar duzu!

NAROA: Ez! Bihar larunbata da.

ELIN: A, egia da! Orduan hondartzara joango gara elkarrekin?

NAROA: Noski! Gaur gauean, nere lagunekin atera nahi duzu ala oso nekatuta zaude?

ELIN: Ez, ez; atera nahi dut.

NAROA: Ba oraintxe bertan deituko diet eta geldituko naiz gerorako. (*Naroa phones, but there is no answer.*) Ez dute erantzuten. Beranduago deituko dut.

ELIN: Nik bitartean lo pixka bat egingo dut.

Vocabulary

aia	or (<i>in questions</i>)
atera	go out
ba-	if
badago	if . . . is, if there is
beranduago	later
bihar	tomorrow
bitartean	meanwhile, in the meantime

deituko diet	I'll call them
ederki!	okay! fine! great!
egia	true
eguraldi	weather
-ekin	with
nere lagunekin	with my friends
elkarrekin	together
entsalada	salad
gau	night, evening
gaur	today
gaur gauean	this evening, tonight
gelditu	arrange to meet someone
geldituko naiz gerorako	I'll arrange to meet later
gose	hunger
ez daukat goserik	I'm not hungry*
gustora	with pleasure, gladly
gustora hartuko nuke	I'd like to have
hartuko nuke	I'd take, I'd have
ideia	idea
iruditzen zait	(it) seems to me, I think
jan	eat
kitto!	that's that! that's all! nothing else
larunbat	Saturday
lo egin	sleep
lo pixka bat egin	have a nap
nahi nuke	I would like
nahi zenuke	would you like
noski!	of course! certainly!
on	good
orduan	then
zerbait	something
zoritzarrez	unfortunately

* Some people feel that **Ez daukat goserik** is not a very 'genuinely Basque' way of saying 'I'm not hungry'; however, it is what most people use colloquially. To say that you're hungry, you may say **Gose naiz**, **Goseak nago** or **Gosea daukat**.

Doing things with words

Finding out someone's wishes or intentions

Study these questions:

Zerbait jan nahi (al) duzu?	Do you want to eat something?
Nere lagunekin atera nahi (al) duzu?	Do you want to go out with my friends?
Zer egin nahi zenuke bihar?	What would you like to do tomorrow?

You may feel it is a bit brusque to ask people what they want to do; in English it is more polite to ask what they *would like to do*. The Basques are less ceremonious, so you are more likely to be asked what you **nahi duzu** than what you **nahi zenuke**. Our advice is to understand **zenuke** (it *is* used sometimes) but, when making an offer or a suggestion yourself, use **duzu**.

Exercise 5 You have a guest. Find out if he/she would like to:

- 1 hondartzara joan orain (*go to the beach now*)
- 2 etxea ikusi (*see the flat/house*)
- 3 dutxatu (*have a shower*)
- 4 lo pixka bat egin (*have a nap*)

If, however, you are not suggesting but simply asking what someone intends or would like to do, **nahi zenuke** may be appropriate, so ...

Exercise 6 Ask a friend whether he/she would like to:

- 1 Euskal Herrian bizi datorren urtean (*live in the Basque Country next year*)
- 2 euskara gehiago ikasi (*learn more Basque*)
- 3 zerbait egin bihar (*do something tomorrow*)

Stating your own wishes or intentions

Study these sentences:

Atera nahi dut.	I want to go out.
Hondartzara joan nahi nuke.	I'd like to go to the beach.
Lo pixka bat egingo dut.	I'm going to have a nap.

Beranduago deituko dut.
**Lagunei deitzeko asmoa
daukat.**

I'll call later.

I intend to call (my) friends.

Basques may express their intentions not only by saying 'I want to do something' (**Zerbait egin nahi dut**) or 'I would like to do something' (**Zerbait egin nahi nuke**) but also, with greater optimism, by declaring 'I am going to do something' (**Zerbait egingo dut**).

'I intend' is expressed as 'I have the intention': **asmoa daukat**. What one intends to do is expressed by the **-tzeko (-teko)** form, obtained by changing **-n** to **-ko** in the **-tze-n (-te-n)** form of verbs which you already know: **deitzen** → **deitzeko**, **joaten** → **joateko**, etc.

Exercise 7 How might you answer each of the questions you asked in exercise 6?

Exercise 8 Now fill in the gaps and check against the dialogue:

NAROA: Zerbait _____ ?

ELIN: Gustora hartuko nuke entsalada bat, eta kitto. Ez daukat goserik.

NAROA: Ondo. Zer egin _____ bihar?

ELIN: Eguraldi ona bādadago, hondartzara _____ .

NAROA: Gaur gaeuan nere lagunekin _____ ?

ELIN: Noski!

NAROA: (...) Ez dute erantzuten. Beranduago _____ .

ELIN: Nik bitartean lo pixka bat _____ .

To say you don't want or intend to do something, use **Ez dut ... nahi** or **Ez daukat ... -t(z)eko asmorik**.

Saying what you mean

'With'

Study these sentences:

Oso pozik nago etxearekin. I'm very happy with the house.
**Nere lagunekin ateria nahi
duzu?** Would you like to go out with
my friends?

**Bihar hondartzara joango
gara elkarrekin.**

Tomorrow we'll go to the beach
together.

The suffix **-ekin**, which means 'with', combines with the singular article as **-arekin**:

etxearekin with the house

With the plural article, it is **-ekin**:

lagunekin with (the) friends

Elkar means 'each other', so **elkarrekin** 'together' is literally 'with each other'.

Exercise 9 Translate into Basque:

- 1 I'm very happy with the car, of course.
- 2 We'll take the train together.

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Further auxiliary forms (preview)

Study the auxiliary forms in these sentences:

**Naroa? Oraintxe deituko
diot.**

Naroa? I'll call her now.

Lagunei deitu al diezu?

Have you called (your) friends?

**Deituko dizut eta hitzegingo
dugu!**

I'll call you and we'll talk!

Let us take stock of the auxiliary forms you know so far. First we have the following two sets, one normally for intransitive (object-less) verbs:

(joango) naiz/zara/da/gara/zarete/dira
I/you/he ... /we/you/they (will go)

and one for transitive verbs, with these forms when the object is *singular*:

(ikusiko) dut/duzu/du/dugu/duzue/dute
I/you/he ... /we/you/they (will see it)

and these other forms when the object is *plural*:

(ikusiko) ditut/dituzu/ditu/ditugu/dituzue/dituzte
I/you/he ... /we/you/they (will see them)

Besides these, you have begun to notice some other auxiliary forms. There is the set used with **gustatu** 'like' and **iruditu** 'seem', which is as follows when referring to something in the *singular*:

(gustatzen) zait/zaizu/zaio/zaigu/zaizue/zaie
I/you/he ... /we/you/they (like it)

but again has distinct forms for referring to things in the *plural*:

(gustatzen) zaizkit/zaizkizu/zaizkio/zaizkigu/zaizkizue/zaizkie
I/you/he ... /we/you/they (like them)

There is another set of forms which we have seen used with the verb **deitu** 'call' when we talk about calling *someone*; there are forms for calling just one person:

(deituko) diot/diozu/dio/diogu/diozue/diote
I/you/he ... /we/you/they (will call him/her)

and others for calling more than one person:

(deituko) diet/dieu/die/dieu/diezue/diete
I/you/he ... /we/you/they (will call them)

Additionally, there are other forms used when the person called is first person ('me, us') or second person ('you'), such as:

deituko dizut I'll call you

For the moment, just concentrate on trying to recognize these forms.

Dialogue 3

In the living room

Elin has just got up from her 'siesta'. Naroa has been watching television

ELIN: Aupa! Lagunei deitu al diezu?

NAROA: Ez, oraintxe horixe bera egiteko asmoa daukat.

ELIN: Zer dago telebistan?

NAROA: Berriak ikusten ari naiz. Bukatzen ari dira. Orain eguraldia emango dute.

- TV WEATHERMAN:** Arratsalde on. Larunbatean zerua estalita egongo da Euskal Herri osoan eta tarteka euria egingo du. Temperaturak ez dira aldatuko. Igandean zerua ilun-ilun egongo da eta euri gehiago egingo du. Beraz, aterkiak prestatu badezpada! Temperaturak ere freskoak izango dira. Itsasoari dagokionez ... Zer eguraldi egingo du? Hitz bat bakarrik ulertu dut: 'euria'!
- ELIN:**
- NAROA:** Orduan dena ulertu duzu. Bihar bero egingo du baina curi pixka bat ere bai.
- ELIN:** Kaka zaharra. Bihar ezin gara joan hondartzara.
- NAROA:** Auskalo! Ez dute beti asmatzen. Igual eguzkia egingo du.

Vocabulary

Note: The words used in the weather forecast will not be given here. Can you understand (or guess) the meaning of more words than Elin can?

asmatu	guess, get it right
Ez dute beti asmatzen.	They don't always get it right.
Aupa!	Hiya!
Auskalo!	Who knows!
bakarrik	only
bero	hot, warm
bero egingo du	it will be warm
berriak	news
beti	always
bukatu	finish
bukatzen ari dira	they're finishing
deitu diezu	you (have) called them
dena	everything, all
egin	do, make
egiteko asmoa daukat	I intend to do
eguraldi	weather
eguraldia eman	give the weather forecast
Zer eguraldi egingo du?	What will the weather be like?
eguzki	sun

eguzkia egingo du	it will be sunny
eman	give
ere bai	too, also
euri	rain
euria egingo du	it will rain
hitz	word
horixe bera	just that
igual	perhaps
ikusten ari naiz	I'm seeing, I'm watching
kaka	shit
Kaka zaharra!	Damn it!
lagunei	friends (<i>object of deitu</i>)
telebista	television
ulertu	understand
ulertu dut	I understood
zahar	old

Saying what you mean

The present continuous tense

Study these sentences:

Berriak ikusten ari naiz.	I'm watching the news.
Programa bukatzen ari da.	The programme is finishing.
Euskara ikasten ari zara?	Are you learning Basque?

This is the tense used to say what is happening now. Some verbs have special simple forms that also express an ongoing activity: **dator** 'is coming', **doa** 'is going', but most verbs do not.

The present continuous is formed from the **-tzen** or **-ten** form of the verb and a *compound auxiliary* made up of the word **ari** followed by a form of the verb 'to be': **ari naiz**, **ari zara**, **ari da** etc. Note that the same auxiliary forms are used with intransitive and transitive verbs; this is an exception to the general rule.

Exercise 10 Answer these questions using the present continuous of the verb given:

- 1 Zer egiten ari da Naroa? (**ikusi**)
- 2 Zer egiten ari da Elin? (**lo egin**)
- 3 Zer egiten ari zara?

Days of the week



The days of the week, like the names of the months, are not capitalized and are treated as common nouns (hence used with the article):

astelehena -a	Monday
astearte -a	Tuesday
asteazken -a	Wednesday
ostegun -a	Thursday
ostiral -a	Friday
larunbat -a	Saturday
igande -a	Sunday

To say 'on Monday, Tuesday etc.', instead of the final -a use -an after a vowel or -ean after a consonant: **astelehenean**, **asteartean** etc.

Exercise 11 (review) Translate:

Hau da zure bulegoa.
 Hemen daukazu komuna.
 Kaka zaharra! Larunbatean curia egingo du.
 Oso eguraldi ona egiten ari da gaur.
 Etxean ardo ona daukat.
 Ze programa txarra!

Language and life

Basque-language media

Until 1980 the Basque **komunikabideak** or 'mass' media consisted of a couple of weekly magazines (**aldizkariak**) and the odd programme (**saioa**) on local radio (**irratia**) stations. Today there is a national television channel (**telebista**), a choice of full-time radio stations, a daily newspaper (**egunkaria**) and various magazines, as well as more specialized or local media, all in Basque.

Euskadi Irratia can be heard all over the Basque Country and offers a staple of music, news bulletins, current affairs programmes, quizzes, serials etc. in Basque. Euskadi Gaztea, also in Basque, plays popular music aimed at a younger audience. There are

also local Basque-language stations serving each region. Euskal Telebista's Basque-language service, ETB1, can be received throughout the country.

Argia is a long-standing Basque-language weekly magazine of current affairs and general interest. HABE (see page 6) publish a monthly magazine for Basque learners, also called *HABE*. There is also a growing number of local magazines, either in Basque or bilingual.

A younger member of the Basque-language media is the newspaper *Euskaldunon Egunkaria*. Unlike the nation-wide television and radio stations, the *Egunkaria*, independent of government control, enjoys editorial autonomy.

6 Goazen buelta bat ematera!

Let's go out!

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- palatalization
- the suffix **-i/-ri** (to whom)

Saying what you mean

- telling the time
- the perfect tense
- indirect statements

Strategies for communication

- talking on the phone
- informal introductions

Talking about . . .

- going out with friends
- people

Language and life

- Basque music

Dialogue 1

On the phone

Naroa phones a friend and arranges to meet in the evening

VOICE: Bai?

NAROA: Idoia etxean al dago?

VOICE: Oraintxe jarriko da.

IDOIA: Bai, nor da?

NAROA: Naroa naiz. Buelta bat ematera aterako al gara gaur?

IDOIA: Bai. Eguerdian Itziar eta Mikel ikusi ditut eta bederatzietan gelditu gara Musika Plazan. Bertsolariak daude.

- NAROA: A, oso ondo. Nere lagun galesa, Elin, gaur iritsi da eta ...
 IDOIA: Primeran! Horrela ezagutuko dugu. Gurekin etorriko al da?
 NAROA: Bai, bai. Josebaren lagunari deitu al diozu?
 IDOIA: Josuri? Bai, baina Gernikara joan da gurasoekin. Jaiak dira. Han familia daukate eta urtero joaten dira, badakizu.
 NAROA: A, bai. Arrazoia daukazu. Orduan bederatzia arte.
 IDOIA: Bai, gero arte. Agur.

Vocabulary

Note: Idoia and Itziar are women's names; like Naroa, these have no English equivalent. Mikel ('Michael'), Joseba ('Joseph') and Josu ('Jesus') are men's names.

arrazoi	reason
arrazoia daukazu	you're right
badakizu	you know, as you know
bederatzia arte!	see you at nine o'clock!
bederatzietan	at nine o'clock
bertsolari	verse reciters (<i>see page 99</i>)
buelta	turn
buelta bat eman	turn around (<i>lit.</i> 'give a turn')
buelta bat ematera joan/atera	go out for a stroll, drive etc. (<i>lit.</i> 'go (out) and turn around')
deitu diozu	you called (him/her)
eguerdi	noon, midday
ezagutu	know (a person or place); meet (someone for the first time)
familia	family; relatives
gelditu gara	we have arranged to meet
guraso(ak)	parents
gurekin	with us
horrela	that way, so, thus
ikusi ditut	I saw (them)
jai(ak)	fiestas
jaiak dira	there are fiestas, it's fiesta time
jarri	put, place
oraintxe jarriko da	she'll come to the phone now, i.e. I'll get her
joan da	(he/she) has gone, went

joaten dira	they go
Musika Plaza	a central square in the old part of Zarautz
nor	who
nor da?	who is it? who's speaking?
-ri	dative suffix (<i>see below</i>)
urte	year
urtero	every year

Strategies for communication

Talking on the phone

Observe the Basque 'telephone etiquette' illustrated in the above dialogue. You will find it useful to study the following notes carefully as you go.

Bai, nor da? or just **Bai?** or **Nor da?** are some typical ways of answering the phone in Basque. One does *not* say **Kaixo** 'Hello!'. Note that unlike English etiquette, it is not considered impolite to ask straight out 'Who is it?', or even **Nor zara?** 'Who are you?'; in English, we'd be more likely to say 'Who's speaking?' Note also that the answer is **(Naroa) naiz** 'I am (Naroa)', rather than **This is N.** or **It's N.** as English speakers would say.

To ask whether you can speak to someone, you may ask **(Idoia) hor dago?** 'Is I. there?' or **(Idoia) etxeian dago?** 'Is I. at home?'

The verb **jarri** (intransitive) is used to mean 'come to the phone', and it is common to say **Jarriko da** 'She'll come to the phone' instead of **Deituko diot** 'I'll call her', although this is possible, as is also **Esango diot** 'I'll tell her' or **Esango diot jartzeko** 'I'll tell her to come to the phone'. In other contexts, however, **jarri** has different meanings, including 'sit, stand, put, place'. If you have arranged (**gelditu**) to meet the other person, you may refer to this at the end of the conversation using the ... **arte** formula, e.g. **Igande arte** 'See you on Sunday' or **Bederatziak arte** 'See you at nine'. Whether you are going to see them or not, you can say **Gero arte** 'See you later'. You can also say **Deituko dizut** 'I'll call you'.

Exercise 1 Fill in the blanks in these telephone conversations:

SOMEONE: **Bai?**

You: **Elin _____?**

SOMEONE: Bai, oraintxe _____.

(*After a while.*)

SOMEONE: Aizu, ez dago. Oraintxe atera da (*she just went out*).

YOU: A, bale. Gero _____ diot.

NAROA: _____?

IDOIA: Kaixo Naroa.

NAROA: Oi, Idoia zara, ezta? Zer moduz?

IDOIA: Ondo. Buelta bat ematera joan nahi al duzu?

(*Five minutes later.*)

IDOIA: Orduan zazpiak _____.

NAROA: Bai, _____.

Saying what you mean

Telling the time



Compare:

bederatziak	nine o'clock
Bederatziak dira.	It's nine o'clock.
Bederatziak arte!	See you at nine!
bederatzietan	at nine o'clock

Notice that times are treated as plural in Basque (-etan is a plural suffix). In the plurals of 'three' and 'four' an -r- is often inserted, e.g. **hirurak** 'three o'clock', **lauretan** 'at four o'clock'. Exceptionally, in 'one o'clock' and 'two o'clock', the word **ordu** 'hour' is prefixed: **ordu bietan** 'at two o'clock'. 'One o'clock' is singular, so we have **Ordu bata da** 'It is one o'clock'.

To specify a.m. or p.m., place **goizeko** (for the morning), **arratsaldeko** (from mid-afternoon to mid-evening) or **gaueko** (for late evening or night) before the time: **goizeko bederatzietan** 'at nine a.m.'

For 'about' with times, place **aldean** after the time, e.g. **hamabiak aldean** 'around about twelve'.

To be even less specific, you may just use **goizean**, **arratsaldean** or **gauean**, but note carefully which periods of the day these refer to (mentioned above); they do not quite coincide with 'morning', 'afternoon' and 'evening', which may result in misunderstandings!

Basques are generally less strictly punctual than the British, but more so than the proverbial Mexicans, so don't go overboard!

‘Half past’ is **t’erdiak** (for **eta erdiak** ‘and a half’), as in **hamar t’erdiak** ‘half past ten’; **hamar t’erdietan** ‘at ten thirty’. ‘A quarter past’ is **eta laurden(ak)**.

‘Five past six’ is **seiak eta bost**, and the same pattern is followed for ‘ten past’, ‘twenty past’ and ‘twenty-five past’: **eta hamar, eta hogei, eta hogeita bost**. ‘At five past six’ is **seiak eta bostetan**.

‘Five to seven’ is **zazpiak bost gutxi**; ‘a quarter to’ is **laurden gutxi**. ‘At ten to seven’ is **zazpiak hamar gutxitan**. From these examples you can work out how to express other times if interested.

You should learn these questions:

Zer ordu da?	What time is it?
zer ordutan?	(at) what time?
zer ordutatik?	from/since what time?
zer ordu arte?	until what time?
noiz?	when?
noitzik?	from/since when?
noiz arte?	until when?

Here are a few more useful expressions:

Goiz da.	It's early.
Berandu da.	It's late.
eguerdian	at midday (actually refers to about one to two o'clock, i.e. around lunch time)

Exercise 2 Answer these questions:

- 1 **Zer ordu da orain?**
- 2 **Zer ordutan joaten zara lanera?**
- 3 **Zer ordu arte lan egiten duzu goizean?**
- 4 **Noiz joango zara Euskal Herrira?**

The perfect tense



Study these sentences:

Hondartzara iritsi gara.	We've arrived at the beach.
Josu Gernikara joan da gurasoekin.	Josu has gone to Gernika with (his) parents.
Idoiari deitu diot.	I('ve) called Idoia.

The perfect tense is formed by adding the usual auxiliary forms to the basic form of the main verb, ending in **-tu, -du, -i, -n** etc. (see page 52).

The tense has two meanings. Often it is equivalent to an English simple past, as in:

Elin gaur iritsi da.	Elin arrived today.
Eguerdian ikusi ditut Itziar eta Mikel.	I saw Itziar and Mikel at noon.

In such cases we are usually referring to something that happened *today*. It can also refer to what someone *has done* (either today or at some other time), as in the earlier examples.

Exercise 3 Say what you did today. Use the vocabulary at the end of the book if necessary.

Talking about . . .

Going out with friends

A favourite form of socializing in the Basque Country is just to **kalera atera** (lit. ‘go out to the street’) and **buelta bat eman** as described on page 38. This is also referred to as **pote bat hartu** (‘have a glass of wine’) – the **bat** not to be taken too seriously. All you need is to **elkartu** (‘get together’) with **lagun bat**. As likely as not you or your friend will soon **ikusi** (‘see’) or **topo egin** (‘bump into’) someone else you know (**ezagutu**) who is probably doing the same thing as you (**buelta bat ematen**), whom you may invite (**gonbidatu**) to **pote bat hartu** with you. After that you may want to suggest **beste bat** (‘another one’) at the next **taberna**, remembering when it’s your turn (**zure txanda**) to pay the round.

If you prefer not to leave things to chance, you may **gelditu** with your **lagunak** as Naroa did, setting a time (**zer ordutan?**) and a place (**non?**). Local people often have their particular group (**talde**) of friends for such purposes, called a **koadrila**. This institution has been compared to marriage: for Basques a **koadrila** is a serious, long-term commitment providing security yet demanding loyalty in return and sometimes ending in tears or anger!

You may **gonbidatu** (‘invite’) a friend or two to your home **afaltzera** (i.e. for an evening meal) or **kafea hartzera** in the afternoon, but the neutral territory of ‘the street’ (**kalea**) is the preferred arena for socialization. Besides bar-hopping (**poteoa**), other possible activities include going out for a meal (**afaltzera**), going to the pictures (**zinera**) or to wherever there happen to be fiestas (**jaietara**).

Alternatively, for a wholesome daytime activity, how about going hiking (**mendira**)?

Dialogue 2

Nine o'clock at the plaza

The members of Naroa's 'koadrila' get together

IDOIA: Nor falta da?

MIKEL: Ba ... Naroa eta bere laguna bakarrik.

IDOIA: Eta Olatz?

MIKEL: Itziarrek esan dit ez datorrela.

ITZIAR: Bai, azterketa bat dauka.

ANTTON and JOSEBA: Begira, hantxe datoak besteaik ...

(*Naroa arrives and introduces her friend to the 'koadrila'.*)

NAROA: Aupa! Hau da Elin.

ELIN: Kaixo, zer moduz?

NAROA: Hau da Idoia, hau Antton, Joseba eta Mikel eta Itziar.

ALL: Kaixo!

ITZIAR: Zerbait hartuko dugu? Goazen!

(*They go into a bar.*)

IDOIA: Zer nahi duzue?

NAROA and JOSEBA: Nik kaña.

ELIN: Nik ere bai.

ANTTON: Nik txakolin bat.

ITZIAR: Ba nik beltza.

IDOIA: Eta zuk, Mikel?

MIKEL: Ura.

(*Idoia calls the barwoman.*)

IDOIA: Aizu! Hiru kaña, txakolin bat, bi beltz eta ur mineral bat.

(*Elin asks about a song being played in the bar.*)

ELIN: Ze kanta da hori?

NAROA: Oso ezaguna da. Mikel Laboarena da.

ELIN: Asko gustatzen zait.

MIKEL: Nongoa zara, Elin?

ELIN: Gales Herrian jaio nintzen.

IDOIA: Hartu edariak.

JOSEBA: Nere arreba Eskozian egon da. Oso polita omci da. Ezagutzen al duzu?

ELIN: Bai, nerc anaia han bizi da. Polita da. Gales Herria ere bai!

NAROA: Biak ezagutzeko gogoa daukat. Bidaia bat antolatu beharko dugu, e!

Vocabulary

Note: New woman's name: Olatz; new man's name: Antton ('Anthony'). Mikel Laboa is a well-known Basque singer.

anaia	brother
antolatu	organize
arreba	sister
azterketa	examination
beltz	<i>see pages 30–1</i>
besteak	the others
biak	both (<i>lit. the two</i>)
datorrela	that (he/she) is coming
ez datorrela	that he/she is not coming
datoz	(they) are coming
edari	drink (<i>noun</i>), beverage
egon	be (<i>see pages 36–7</i>)
egon da	has been, was
esan	say, tell
esan dit	told me
Eskozia	Scotland
ezagun	well known
falta da	is missing, isn't here
Goazen!	Let's go! Come on!
gogo	desire, wish
ezagutzeko gogoa daukat	I'd love to see (<i>lit. I have a desire to be acquainted with</i>)
hartu	take, have
Hartu edariak!	Here are your drinks!
Zerbait hartuko dugu?	Shall we have a drink?
jaio	be born
jaio nintzen	I was born
kanta	song
kaña	<i>see pages 30–1</i>
Laboarena	Laboña's, by Laboña
omen da	I hear that it is, I understand that it is
txakolin	<i>see pages 30–1</i>
ur (mineral)	<i>see pages 30–1</i>
ze	what

Strategies for communication

Informal introductions

Look at how Naroa introduces her friends.

Exercise 4 Now introduce Naroa to some of your friends using the above dialogue as a reference.

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Palatalization

'Anthony' (or 'Tony') is either **Anton** or **Antton** in Basque. The second form is pronounced almost like 'An-tyon'; it is a palatalized t. Because of a tendency to confuse **tt** and **tx**, the form **Antxon** is also encountered.

Basque has the following palatal consonants: **ñ** (approximately 'ny'), **ll** ('ly'), **tt** ('ty'), **dd** ('dy'), **x** ('sh') and **tx** ('ch').

The consonants **n**, **l**, **t**, **d**, **s/z** and **ts/tz** are sometimes palatalized in Basque words as a way of expressing affection, familiarity or 'softening'. For example, **gozo** means 'sweet' (like sugar) but **goxo** means 'delicious' or 'gentle'; **amona** is 'grandmother' while **amoña** is 'granny'; a very large dog (for which Basques have a certain predilection!) is a **zakur** whereas a smaller (or normal) specimen is known as a **txakur**.

You will also come across such diminutives in people's names, and **Antton** is an example. So **Pedro** 'Peter' gives **Pello** 'Pete', the Spanish **José** gives **Joxe** (stressed on the first syllable!).

As we have seen, the above consonants can also be palatalized following an **i**, although in the modern standard language this palatalization is not shown in the spelling. Certain dialects do not palatalize after **i**, but all dialects make some use of expressive palatalization.

The suffix -i/-ri (to whom)



Study these sentences:

Oraintxe deituko diot Naroari. I'll call Naroa now.

Josebaren lagunari deitu diozu? Have you phoned Joseba's friend?

The words ending in -(r)i in the above examples are in the dative case; generally they express *who to*:

Eman hau Elini.

Give this to Elin.

They are also used as the objects of certain verbs that take the dative in Basque although there is no 'to' in English, such as **deitu** 'call' and **esan** 'tell' (i.e. 'say to'):

Deitu Elini.

Call Elin.

Esan Naroari ...

Tell Naroa ...

Verbs taking a dative object have auxiliary forms of the **diot** type, e.g.

Nik deituko diot Elini.

I'll call Elin.

or of the **zait** type, e.g.

Etxea gustatzen zaio Elini. Elin likes the house.

Note that a third-person-singular dative object is represented by an **-o-** in the auxiliary, while a plural one is represented by an **-e-**, e.g.

Nere lagunei esango diet. I'll tell my friends.

Elini eta Naroari, hondartza gustatzen zaie. Elin and Naroa like the beach.

Let us look at the main forms of the dative suffix; the corresponding forms of the 'with' suffix, **-ekin** (Unit 5), will also be shown for comparison and reference.

'To' (dative) 'With' Examples:

Proper names

ending in a consonant	-i	-ekin	Elini, Elinekin
ending in a vowel	-ri	-rekin	Naroari, Naroarekin
Most personal pronouns	-ri	-rekin	zuri, guri, nirekin
Singular article	-ari	-arekin	lagunari, lagunarekin
Plural article	-ei	-ekin	lagunei, lagunekin
Zuek 'you (plural)'	zuei	zuekin	
Nor? 'who'	nori	norekin	

Exercise 5 Answer these questions about the dialogue; the answers all have the dative suffix:

- 1 Nori esan dio Olatzek ezin dela etorri (*that she can't come*)?
- 2 Nori emango diote ura? (*eman 'give'*)
- 3 Nori gustatzen zaio Mikel Laboaren kanta?

Saying what you mean

Indirect statements

Study these sentences:

Itziarrek esan dit Olatz ez datorrela.

Itziar told me that Olatz isn't coming.

Esan Naroari Elin hemen dagoela.

Tell Naroa that Elin is here.

Eskozia oso polita omen da. I've heard that Scotland is very pretty.

Notice that in the first two sentences the suffix **-ela** attached to a verb has a similar function to *that* in the English translation:

dator she is coming	→	datorrela that she is coming
dago she is	→	dagoela that she is

Sometimes the suffix is **-la**, e.g.

dauka he/she has	→	daukala that he/she has
nahi dut they want	→	nahi dutela that they want

and sometimes there are further changes:

da he/she/it is	→	dela that he/she/it is
nahi dut I want	→	nahi dudala that I want
gustatzen zait I like	→	gustatzen zaidala that I like

This suffix can only be added to a verb form.

These forms are used in indirect statements, that is, when reporting what someone says, thinks, knows etc. It corresponds to English *that*, but beware! Sometimes we omit *that* in English:

I know she's come. = I know *that* she's come.

In Basque **-(e)la** cannot be omitted:

Etorri da. She's come.

Badakit etorri dela. I know she's come.

There is another way of saying that what you are saying is what you have been told or heard, rather than what you know at first hand. It consists of placing **omen** in front of the finite form:

Etorri omen da. She has come (I am told).

Exercise 6 Answer these questions about the dialogue, beginning your responses with the words given:

- 1 **Zer esaten dio Naroak Elini?**
Kanta hori ...
- 2 **Zer esaten dio Josebak Elini?**
Bere arreba ...
- 3 **Zer esaten du Josebak?**
Eskozia oso ...
- 4 **Zer esaten dio Elinek Josebari?**
Bere anaia ...
- 5 **Zer esaten du Elinek?**
Gales Herria ere ...

Talking about . . .

People

persona person **jende** people

Jende is singular in form but plural in meaning:

Non dago jendea? Where are the people?

To say 'three people' just say **hiru**:

Hiru etorri dira. Three (people) have come.

and similarly:

Zenbat etorri dira? How many people have come?
Bat etorri da. One person has come.

emakume/andre	woman, lady	gizon	man
neska	girl	mutil	boy, fellow
neskatxo	little girl	mutiko	little boy
umetxo/haurtxo	baby	ume/haur	child

In English it is now considered sexist to call women ‘girls’, since men are not normally called ‘boys’. In Basque, however, women and even grandmothers are regularly referred to informally as **neskak** but no one’s ire is provoked since men are similarly called **mutilak**. **Andre** is more respectful than **emakume**, being closest to ‘lady’ in English. There is no word in regular use for ‘gentleman’; don’t use **jaun**, which means ‘lord’! The expression **jaun-andreak**, ‘ladies and gentlemen’ (but notice the order!), is an exception.

zahar	old
gazte	young
gazte	young man, youth (<i>normally male</i>)

neska gazte bat	a young girl, a girl
Badator gazte bat.	A young man is coming.

lagun	friend
ezagun	acquaintance

As an adjective, **ezagun** means ‘well known’. Don’t confuse **ezagun** with the verb **ezagutu** which means both ‘know, be acquainted with (a place or person)’ and ‘get to know, become acquainted with, meet’. This in turn is not to be confused with **jakin** ‘know (a fact, a language etc.)’!

gurasoak	parents		
aita-amak	parents, Mum and Dad		
ama	mother	aita	father
amatxo	mummy	aitatxo	daddy
amona/amama	grandmother	aitona/aitita	grandfather
izeba	aunt	osaba	uncle
izeba Ana	Aunty Ana		
ahizpa	sister (of a female)	anaia	brother
arreba	sister (of a male)	neba	brother (of a female)
lehengusu	cousin		

Neba is only used in Bizkaian dialect; the **ahizpa/arreba** distinction, however, is observed everywhere.

emazte/andre	wife	senar	husband
alaba	daughter	seme	son
familia	family		
iloba	nephew, niece		
(b)iloba	grandchild		

Song

Txoria txori

Here are the words of a song written by J.A. Artze and sung by Mikel Laboa. The simple, poignant message, a haunting melody and Laboa's inimitable voice have all helped to make this one of the best-loved of all contemporary Basque songs, as well as a hit with learners of the language

Hegoak ebaki banizkion
nerea izango zen,
ez zuen aldegingo.
Bainan honela
ez zen gehiago txoria izango,
eta nik txoria nuen maite.

*If I had cut its wings
it would have been mine,
it wouldn't have flown away.
But then
it would have been a bird no longer,
and it was the bird that I loved.*

Language and life

Basque music

In centuries past, Basque folk traditions, like those of other cultures throughout the world, included a lively oral literature, now in decline and already partly lost to us. However, some surviving elements of those traditions have been taken up with renewed enthusiasm by recent generations of Basques and given a new lease on life.

Some forms of traditional verse recital are still practised, such as the **kopla zaharrak** sung on Santa Ageda day and other festivals. **Bertsolaritza**, improvised verse singing, also survived into the twentieth century and has undergone a renaissance in the post-Franco period, with the organization of local and national competitions and courses to train young potential **bertsolariak** in the art of making up **bertsoak**.

Traditional Basque musical instruments include the **txistu** (a high-pitched wooden wind instrument played with one hand), the **dultzaina** (a conical wind instrument popular in Navarre), the **alboka** (a distant relative of the clarinet made up of two horns) and **txalaparta** (rousing rhythmic music produced by hitting variously pitched planks of wood with wooden sticks). **Trikiti** (more often referred to in the Bizkaian dialect form **trikitixa**) is played

on a tambourine and a small accordion, sometimes with singing and usually danceable; introduced by Lombard immigrants in the nineteenth century, both the music and the dancing have undergone a recent revival, with frequent competitions and many amateur and professional groups (*trikitilariak*). Some of the latter, such as *Tapia eta Leturia*, have experimented mixing *trikitixa* rhythms and sounds with various modern musical styles.

Modern Basque folk, pop and rock music has flourished since the 1960s within a broader cultural (and political) revival movement, the first wave of which produced important singer-authors including Mikel Laboa, Benito Lertxundi, Xabier Lete and Lourdes Iriondo. These were followed in the 1970s and 1980s by folk-pop singers like Imanol and groups like Oskorri, and numerous more rock-orientated groups including Egan, Akelarre, Itoiz and Niko Etchart, and hard-rock bands such as Ertzainak, Delirium Tremens, Negu Gorriak and E.H. Sukarra.

7 Erosketak (1)

Shopping (1)

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- plural-object verb forms
- the suffix **-k** (2)
- adjectival **-ko**

Saying what you mean

- which ones; these or those?
- saying how much and how many
- any and none
- 'other' and 'another'
- comparisons (1)

Doing things with words

- expressing preference

Talking about ...

- food and shopping
- books and music

Dialogue 1

At the grocer's

Elin goes shopping

ELIN: Egun on.

SHOPKEEPER: Bai, egun on. Eguraldi txarra, e?

ELIN: Bai, oso.

SHOPKEEPER: Zer nahi zenuen?

ELIN: Letxuga bat eta bi edo hiru tomate.

SHOPKEEPER: Letxuga ... eta tomatuek. Zein tomate nahi dituzu?

Horiek gorriagoak daude. Hauek pixka bat berdeak daude oraindik, baina hobeak dira entsaladarako.

ELIN: Nahiago ditut gorriak.

(*The shopkeeper weighs three tomatoes.*)

SHOPKEEPER: Horrela nahikoa?

ELIN: Bai.

SHOPKEEPER: Zerbait gehiago?

ELIN: Bai, ogi bat, esne bat eta gazta pixka bat. Ba al daukazue eguzkitako kremarik?

SHOPKEEPER: Hori aldameneko dendan aurkituko duzu.

ELIN: Zenbat da dena?

SHOPKEEPER: Guztira 320 (hirurchun eta hogei).

ELIN: Agur.

SHOPKEEPER: Agur.

At the post office

Elin purchases some stamps

CLERK: Bai?

ELIN: Seiluak nahi ditut.

CLERK: Atzerrirako?

ELIN: Bai, Europarako.

CLERK: Zenbat behar dituzu?

ELIN: Hamar.

CLERK: Seirehun pezeta. Besterik?

ELIN: Ez, hori da dena.

Vocabulary

-ago	-er, more (<i>comparative suffix</i>)
aldameneko	neighbouring, next door
atzerri	abroad
aurkitu	find
behar dut	I need
berde	green, unripe
beste	other, else
Besterik?	Anything else?
edo	or
egun	day
Egun on!	good morning!

entsalada	salad
entsaladarako	for salad
erosketak	shopping
erosketak egin	do the shopping, go shopping
esne	milk
Europa	Europe
gazta	cheese
gehiago	more (<i>quantity</i>)
Zerbait gehiago?	Anything else?
gorri	red, ripe
gorriago	redder, riper
guzti	all
guztira	altogether, in total
hauek	these (<i>plural of hau</i>)
hobe	better (<i>irregular comparative</i>)
horiek	those (<i>plural of hori</i>)
krema	cream (usually not the edible kind), lotion
eguzkitako krema	sun cream
letxuga	lettuce
nahiago dut	I prefer
nahiko(a)	enough; quite a lot, quite
ogi	bread, loaf of bread
oraindik	still, yet
-rako	for
-rik	any
seilu	stamp
tomate	tomato
txar	bad
zenuen	you had/did (<i>past tense of duzu</i>)
Zer nahi zenuen?	What did you want? What can I do for you?

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Plural-object verb forms

Study these sentences:

Seiluak nahi ditut.

I want (some) stamps.

Bi hiztegi dauzkat.

I've got two dictionaries.

Hauek gustatzen zaizkit.

I like these.

Nere lagunei deituko diet.

I'll call my friends.

Here is a list of the plural-object verb forms you should now know:

	<i>dut etc.</i>	<i>daukat etc.</i>	<i>zait etc.</i>	<i>diot etc.</i>
I	ditut	dauzkat	zaizkit	diet
you	dituzu	dauzkazu	zaizkizu	diezu
s/he, it	ditu	dauzka	zaizkio	die
we	ditugu	dauzkagu	zaizkigu	diegu
you	dituzue	dauzkazue	zaizkizue	diezue
they	dituzte(!)	dauzkate	zaizkie	diete

Exercise 1 Complete the second sentence in each pair:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1 You need a tomato. | Tomate bat behar duzu. |
| How many tomatoes do you
need? | Zenbat tomate behar _____? |
| 2 I prefer rosé wine. | Nahiago dut ardo gorria. |
| I prefer ripe tomatoes. | _____ tomate gorriak. |
| 3 We'll change a little money. | Diru pixka bat aldatuko dugu. |
| We'll change three hundred
pounds. | Hirurehun _____. |
| 4 We've got a nice lettuce. | Letxuga eder bat daukagu. |
| We've got red and green
tomatoes. | Tomate _____ eta berdeak
_____. |
| 5 Zarautz has a fine beach. | Zarautzek hondartza ederra
dauka. |
| Zarautz has a lot of bars. | _____ asko _____. |
| 6 Do you like this table? | Mahai hau gustatzen al zaizu? |
| Do you like these chairs? | Aulkia hauek _____
_____? |
| 7 The shopkeeper will help her. | Dendariak lagunduko dio. |
| The shopkeeper will help
them. | _____ _____ _____. |

Saying what you mean

Which ones; these or those?

Study these sentences:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Zein dira mendi horiek? | What are those mountains? |
| Zein tomate nahi dituzu? | Which tomatoes do you want? |
| Tomate horiek hobeak dira. | Those tomatoes are better. |

Zein, like *which* in English, can have singular or plural reference. Since there is no article in the **zein**-phrase, this may be ambiguous:

zein tomate? which tomato(es)?

but the verb allows us to distinguish between singular and plural:

Zein tomate nahi duzu?	Which tomato do you want?
Zein tomate nahi dituzu?	Which tomatoes do you want?

Similarly with **zenbat**, so:

Zenbat kafe dago hemen?	How much coffee is there here?
Zenbat kafe daude hemen?	How many coffees are there here? (i.e. cups of coffee)

The demonstratives do have distinct plural forms, ending in **-ek**:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
hau this	hauek these
hori that	horiek those
hura that (far away)	haiek those (far away)

Notice the third form is irregular. These are either used alone or *following* the noun *without* the article, as in the third example above.

Most people don't say **horiek** and we suggest that you pronounce it without the **r**, as **hoiek** (i.e. 'oyek').

Exercise 2 Fill in the blanks:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 How much lettuce do you need? | Zenbat letxuga behar duzu? |
| How many lettuces do you need? | _____ dituzu? |
| 2 Which wine do you prefer? | Zein ardo nahiago duzu? |
| Which wines do you prefer? | Zein _____? |
| 3 This is my friend. | Hau da nere laguna. |
| These are my friends. | _____ dira nere lagunak. |
| 4 That boy is good-looking. | Mutil hori polita da. |
| Those boys are good-looking. | _____. |
| 5 What is that mountain? | Zein da mendi hori? |
| What are those mountains? | _____? |

Saying how much and how many

Exercise 3 Learn the following important words:

bat	one, a, an
batzuk	some (more than one)
pixka bat	a little, a bit, some
pare bat	a couple, a few
asko	a lot, many, very much
pila bat	loads, heaps
gehiago	more
gutxi	not many, not much, few
gutxiago	fewer, less, not so many, not so much

These quantifiers may, like the demonstratives and **zenbat**, be used either alone (see above), or with an unsuffixed noun which they must *follow*:

letxuga bat	one lettuce, a lettuce
liburu batzuk	some books
tomate pare bat	a couple of tomatoes
taberna asko	a lot of bars
komisio gehiago	more commission
denda gutxi	few shops, not many shops
supermerkatu gutxiago	fewer supermarkets

Note also how compound quantifiers are constructed; these *precede* the unsuffixed noun:

litro bat esne	a litre of milk
bi kilo patata	two kilos of potatoes
hiru baso ur	three glasses of water

Although the official metric weight units **gramo** and **kilo(gramo)** are in general use, Basques also employ a ‘pound’ (**libra**) equal to half a kilo.

However, the article is added to **den** ‘all’ and **guzti** ‘all, every’. The former is mostly used without a noun, and can translate ‘everything’ (**dena**) or ‘everyone’ (**denak**):

Gazta guztia jan duzu.	You’ve eaten all the cheese.
Tomate guztiak jan ditugu.	We’ve eaten all the tomatoes.
Hori da dena.	That is all.

Denak hemen daude.	They're all here.
Dena erosi dut.	I've bought everything.
Etorri al dira denak?	Has everybody come? (<i>note the plural</i>)

Remember that whereas the above all follow a noun, **zein**, **zenbat** and the numerals above *one* precede the noun.

Exercise 4 Complete the sentences, then compare with the dialogue.

SHOPKEEPER: Zer nahi duzu?

ELIN: Letxuga _____ eta bi edo hiru _____.

SHOPKEEPER (*putting three tomatoes on the scale*): Horrela _____?

ELIN: Bai.

SHOPKEEPER: Zerbait _____?

ELIN: Bai, ogi _____, esne _____ eta gazta _____.
Zenbat da _____?

Any and none

Study these sentences:

Ba al daukazue eguzkitako kremarik? Have you got any suntan lotion?

Ez daukagu esnerik. We haven't got any milk.

Ez dago problemarik. There's no problem (*lit. There isn't any problem.*)

To express 'any' in such sentences as these, the suffix **-rik** is added to the noun phrase in place of the article. This is called the partitive suffix. Singular and plural are not distinguished, but the **-rik** phrase is always treated as singular. After a consonant, the suffix is **-ik**:

Ez dago libururik.

There aren't any books *or* There are no books.

Ez daukat lanik.

I haven't got (any) work *or* I have no work.

Notice how **-(r)ik** with a negative translates 'no' in these examples. The partitive is used mainly in negative sentences and in questions.

Exercise 5 You need these things. Say that you haven't got them, then ask a neighbour if they have them:

- 1 Esnea behar duzu. →
Ez daukat _____. Ba al daukazu _____?
- 2 Kafea behar duzu.
- 3 Gatza behar duzu. (*gatz* 'salt')
- 4 Seiliak behar dituzu.
- 5 Ardo pixka bat behar duzu.
- 6 Ardo beltza behar duzu.
- 7 Tomate bat behar duzu.

Talking about . . .

Food and shopping

Basques eat three main meals, although neither their times nor their typical content coincide very closely with British habits. Basque cooking has an excellent reputation, so on visiting, and particularly when with local people, we suggest you leave the baked beans at home together with all your preconceived ideas on the subject, and allow yourself to enjoy the Basque eating experience.

Meals are more often referred to by verbs (they are activities!) than by nouns:

	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Typically consists of</i>
'breakfast'	gosaldu	gosari	7–10	kafesnea and a croissant
'lunch'	bazkaldu	bazkari	1–3	three-course meal with wine, followed by coffee
'supper'	afaldu	afari	8–10	a bit like an English breakfast: may include eggs (<i>arraultzak</i>) or an omelette (<i>tortila</i>), cold cuts, cheese etc.

On festive occasions or if you **afaldu** out, however, the evening meal becomes a more elaborate affair with all the trappings of the **bazkaria** and more.

Additionally, there are two institutionalized snack-times for those with sufficient appetite: a mid-morning **hamaiketako**

(‘clevenses’) and a late-afternoon *merienda* (verb: *meriendatu*). These are apt to be confused with lunch and tea respectively by unwary Britons, but they are not a Basque’s main meals. A typical *hamaietakoa* is a *bokadilo* or *ogitarteko*, i.e. a hefty sandwich, and a glass of wine; *merienda* can be anything from a coffee and a cake (*pastel bat*) to another *bokadilo*. Some bars sell a selection of *bokadiloak*, even if not advertised, so ask (**Ba al daukazu bokadilorik?**)!

It is understandable that Basques are not as given to in-between snacks as the British; bars of chocolate (*txokolatinak*), packets of crisps (*patatak*) and the like are for children and teenagers, and biscuits are mainly reserved for breakfast.

Eating habits influence shopping habits. You will not find much in the way of tinned foods, because Basques prefer home-cooked food and distrust tins. Frozen foods are more popular, but ready-made meals are not; microwave ovens are still fairly new. All in all, shops sell fewer processed foods and a larger proportion of ‘raw materials’. Here is some basic vocabulary:

haragi	meat	arrain	fish
fruta	fruit	ogi	bread
esne	milk	ur	water
gatz	salt	azukre	sugar
olio	oil	tipula	onion
letxuga	lettuce	tomate	tomato
patata	potato	arraultz	egg
gazta	cheese	gaileta	biscuit
txokolate	chocolate	izozki or helatu	ice-cream

Non-food items that may be bought in a supermarket, and in some cases even a small grocers, include:

pilak	batteries	kleenex (pron. klines)	tissues
poxpoluak	matches	hortzetako pasta	toothpaste
jaboi	soap	komuneko papera	toilet paper
txanpu	shampoo	konpresa	sanitary towel
orrazi	comb	afeitatzeko makina	razor
painal	nappy	kolonia	eau de cologne
preserbatibo	condom	tampax (pron. tanpas)	tampax
kutxila	razor blade	eguzkitako krema	suntan lotion

In a **farmazia** or **botika** (identified by a green cross), you can find some of the above articles, as well as:

tiritak	plasters	aspirinak	aspirin
botika	medicine	pastilak	pills
hortzetako zepilo	toothbrush		

In a **paperdenda** you will find:

postal	postcard	sobre	envelope
(idazteko) paper	(writing) paper	boligrafo	ball-pen
	(paper-a, one r)	mapa	map

koaderno notebook

For the following you will want an **argazkidenda (fotografi-denda)**:

karrete	roll of film	pelikula	film
errebelatu	develop	argazki	photograph
argazki makina	camera	bideo zinta	videotape

Both tobacco and stamps are sold at an **estanko** (these also sell stationery, but not all stationers sell stamps and tobacco):

tabako	tobacco (in general)	puru	cigar
zigarro	cigarette	seiliu	stamp
txiskero	lighter		

Some shopping items not listed above:

eguzkitako	sunglasses	toaila	towel
betaurrekoak		opari	gift, present

Clothes will be discussed in Unit 10.

Dialogue 2

At a bookshop

Elin wishes to buy a dictionary and a cassette

ASSISTANT: Bai?

ELIN: Euskarazko hiztegi bat bilatzen ari naiz. Honek zenbat balio du?

ASSISTANT: Horrek? Hiru mila pezeta.

ELIN: Garestia da.

ASSISTANT: Beste hiztegi hau merkagoa da.

ELIN: Erakutsi, mesedez. Ez, hau txikiagia da. Lchenengoa hartuko dut. Beste gauza bat. Ba al daukazue Oskorriren zinta berria?

- ASSISTANT:** Zinta ez da gelditzen. Compact disk-a bakarrik gelditzen zait.
- ELIN:** Ez, ez.
- ASSISTANT (showing another tape by Oskorri):** Ezagutzen al duzu hau? Nere iritziz hobea da.
- ELIN:** Zaharragoa da, ez?
- ASSISTANT:** Iaz atera zen.
- ELIN:** Ez dakit. Berriena nahi nuen. Edukiko al duzue berriro?
- ASSISTANT:** Ba, datorren astean seguraski ekarriko dute.
- ELIN:** Bale. Itxoingo dut orduan. Zenbat zen hiztegia?
- ASSISTANT:** Hiru mila, mesedez.
- ELIN:** Eskerrik asko.
- ASSISTANT:** Zuri! Agur.
- ELIN:** Agur.

Vocabulary

Note: Oskorri is the name of a popular music group.

aste	week
atera zen	it came out
bale	okay, alright
balio du	costs
berri	new
berriena	the newest one, the most recent one
berriro	again
bilatu	look for
datorren	next
datorren astean	next week
eduki	have
edukiko duzu?	will you have? will you get?
-egi	too
ekarri	bring
ekarriko dute	they'll bring it, i.e. we'll get it
-en(a)	(the) ... -est (<i>superlative suffix</i>)
erakutsi	show
euskarazko	Basque, in Basque
garesti	expensive
gauza	thing
Beste gauza bat.	And another thing; Oh yes, and ...

gelditu	remain
ez da gelditzen	there are none left, (it) is sold out, we've run out
gelditzen zait	I have ... left, I've still got
hiztegi	dictionary
honek	this (one) (subject: <i>hau</i> + <i>-k</i>)
horrek	that (one) (subject: <i>hori</i> + <i>-k</i>)
iaz	last year
iritzi	opinion
nere iritziz	in my opinion
itxoin	wait
lehenengo	first
merke	cheap
nahi nuen	I wanted
zen	was (<i>simple past of da</i>)
zinta	tape
zuri	to you (<i>dative</i>)
Zuri!	Thank you! (<i>shopkeepers' response to Eskerrik asko</i>)

Saying what you mean

'Other' and 'another'

Exercise 6 Note these different ways of using **beste** 'other'.

Beste zinta bat daukagu.	We have another tape.
Baina beste hau hobea da.	But this other one is better.
Beste hiztegia merkeagoa da.	The other dictionary is cheaper.

Beste zintak zaharragoak dira.	The other tapes are older.
Besterik?	Anything else? (= Any other?)
Beste gauza bat ...	Another thing ...

Comparisons (1)

Study these sentences:

Beste hiztegia merkeagoa The other dictionary is cheaper.
da.

Tomate horiek gorriagoak Those tomatoes are riper.
daude.

Zinta hau zaharragoa da, This tape is older, but it's better.
baina hobea da.

Tomate hauek hobeaak dira These tomatoes are better for entsaladarako.

Hiztegi hau txikiagia da. This dictionary is too small.
Tomate hauek gorriegiak daude. These tomatoes are too ripe.

A: Zein zinta erosi duzu? Which tape did you buy?
B: Berriena. The newest (one).

Basque has three suffixes that are used in the regular comparison of adjectives or adverbs:

- 1 **-ago** is like *-er* in English; it forms the comparative.
- 2 **-en** is like *-est* in English; it forms the superlative.
- 3 **-egi** forms the ‘excessive’, which in English is expressed by *too*.

For example:

handi	big
handiago	bigger
handien	biggest
handiegi	too big

Comparative, superlative and excessive adjectives can take the same suffixes as cardinal ones, such as the article **-a**, **-ak** or the partitive **-rik**; see the above examples.

There are few irregular comparisons, the most important being **hobe** ‘better’ (the comparative of **on** ‘good’) and **gehiago** ‘more’ (the comparative of **asko** ‘many, much’).

Exercise 7  Reply ‘Yes, but that other one is better, cheaper etc.’ or ‘Yes, but those other ones are better etc.’:

- 1 Seilu hau zaharra da. →
Bai, baina beste seilu hori zaharragoa da.
- 2 Hiztegi hau txikia da.
- 3 Patata hauek merkeak dira.
- 4 Bideo zinta hauek onak dira.

Exercise 8 Find the sentences in the dialogue that mean:

- 1 No, this is too small.
- 2 In my opinion this is a better (one).
- 3 It is older, isn’t it?
- 4 I wanted the newest (one).

Grammatical nuts and bolts

The suffix -k (2)



Study these sentences:

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| Zarautzek hondartza dauka. | Zarautz has a beach. |
| Elinek ondo hitzegiten du euskaraz. | Elin speaks Basque well. |
| Naroak lagunak ditu Iparraldean. | Naroa has friends in the North. |

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| A: Hiztegi honek zenbat balio du? | How much does this dictionary cost? |
| B: Horrek? Hiru mila pezeta. | That one? Three thousand pesetas. |

The forms of the *ergative* suffix are:

Proper names

	<i>Examples</i>
Ending in a consonant	-ek
Ending in a vowel	-k
Most personal pronouns	-k
Singular article	-ak
Plural article	-ek
Zuek 'you (plural)'	zuek
Nor 'who'	nork

The hardest forms to learn are those of the singular demonstratives, which are irregular because they each have a distinct stem for suffixed forms:

	<i>This</i>	<i>That</i>	<i>That (over there)</i>
with -k	hau	hori	hura
with -i (dative)	honek	horrek	hark
with -ekin ('with')	honi	horri	hari
	honekin	horrekin	harekin

The plural forms are more regular:

	<i>These</i>	<i>Those</i>	<i>Those (over there)</i>
with -k	hauek	horiek	haiiek
with -i (dative)	hauei	horiei	haiiei
with -ekin ('with')	hauekin	horiekin	haiiekin

The ergative suffix is used with the subjects of:

- verbs taking the auxiliary **dut** . . . , e.g. **Nik ikusten dut** ‘I see (it)’;
- verbs taking the auxiliary **diot** . . . , e.g. **Nik lagunduko diot** ‘I’ll help (her/him)’;
- the verb **eduki** ‘have’, e.g. **Nik badaukat zinta hau** ‘I’ve got this tape’.

It is also used when one of these verbs is merely understood, e.g.

Hiztegi honek zenbat balio du? – Horrek?
Nork nahi du kaña bat? – Nik!
Nik zuritoa (*nahi dut* understood).

Exercise 9 Answer these questions about the text. Don’t forget the **-k**!

- 1 **Zerk balio du 3.000 pezeta? (What costs . . .)**
- 2 **Nork kantatzen du zintan? (Who sings . . .)**
- 3 **Nork nahi du Oskorriren zinta berria? (Who wants . . .)**

Adjectival -ko

Study these sentences:

Euskarazko hiztegi bat nahi	I want a Basque dictionary.
dut.	(= a dictionary in-Basque)
Eguzkitako krema erosi	We need to buy suntan lotion.
behar dugu.	(= cream for in-the-sun)
Hori aldameneko dendar	You’ll find that in the shop
aurkituko duzu.	next-door.
Gaurko eguraldia hobea da.	Today’s weather is better.
Oraingo musika ez zait	I don’t like modern music.
gustatzen.	(= the music of now)

The suffix allows words other than adjectives to be used adjectivally, i.e. as qualifiers of nouns. Sometimes these words are adverbs or adverbial expressions:

gaur	today	→ gaurko eguraldia	today’s weather
euskaraz	in Basque	→ euskarazko liburuak	books in Basque

When **-ko** replaces **-n** it may incorporate the latter's meaning of 'in, on, at', e.g.

eguzkitan	in the sun	→ eguzkitako krema	suntan lotion (i.e. 'cream for in-the- sun')
aldamenean	next door	→ aldameneko denda	the shop next door

Unlike normal adjectives, forms with **-ko** precede the noun they qualify.

Exercise 10 Answer these questions in Basque. You may need to consult the shopping vocabulary given earlier.

- 1 Zer behar duzu hondartzan ez erretzeko (*not to get burnt*)?
- 2 Eta begiek (*eyes*) zer behar dut eguzkitan?
- 3 Bi gauza behar dituzu hortzak garbitzeko (*to clean your teeth*)
Zer dira gauza hauek?
- 4 Gutun bat idazteko (*to write a letter*) zer beharko duzu?

Doing things with words

Expressing preference

Study these sentences:

Lehenengoa erosiko/hartuko dut. I'll buy/take the first one.

Nahiago dut gorria. I prefer the red one.

Nahiago ditut berdeak. I prefer the green ones.

Ez zait gustatzen hori. I don't like that one.

Nere iritziz zinta hau hobea da. In my opinion this tape is better.

Exercise 11 Using similar expressions, give your personal opinion on these subjects:

rock musika

telebistako programak

haragia

Talking about . . .

Books and music

Here is some useful vocabulary:

liburudenda	bookshop
musikadenda	music shop
liburu	book
aldizkari	magazine, periodical
egunkari	daily newspaper
hiztegi	dictionary
nobela	novel
idazle	writer
idatzi	write
irakurri	read
musika	music
kanta/abesti	song
diska	record
zinta	tape
euskal musika	Basque music
talde	group, band
entzun	listen
kantaldi/kontzertu	concert
jaialdi	festival

Shop signs etc.

Here are the signs on some of the shops and other commercial establishments that Elin walked past today:

supermerkatua	fotokopiak	Aroztegia
AZOKA	TABAKOAK	Ileapaindegia
Haragitegia	FARMAZIA	Edaritegia
ARRAINDEGIA	Argidenda	TABERNA
Okindegia	sukaldea	Kafetegia
gozategia –	BURDINDEGIA	Jatetxea
izozkitegia	Auto Osagarriak	Erretegia
ARDOTEGIA	oinetakoak	HOTELA
Liburudenda	ZAPATEGIA	Pentsioa

Signs on shop doors:

ITXITA

IREKITA

ZABALIK

BULTZA

Lan orduak

9,00–13

16,30–20

Astelehen goizean itxita

Orduak

8–12,30

2–7

Larunbatak

8–13

Neguko ordutegia

10–1 4–8

Udako ordutegia

10–1 4.30–8.30

Vocabulary

apaindu	decorate, smarten up
argi	light; electricity
ardo	wine
arotz	carpenter
arrain	fish
auto	car, automobile
bultza!	push!
burdin	iron
erre	burn; roast, grill, barbecue; smoke
erretegi	grill, restaurant specializing in grilled meat
farmazia	chemist's
goiz	morning
gozo	sweet
haragi	meat
hotel	hotel
ile	hair
ileapaindegi	hairdresser's
irekita	open
itxita	closed, shut
izozki	ice-cream

jatetxe	restaurant
kafe	coffee
liburu	book
negu	winter
oinetako	shoe, footwear
okin	baker
ordu	hour, time (of day)
ordutegi	timetable; opening hours
osagarri	component
pentsio	lodging house
supermerkatu	supermarket
tabako	tobacco
uda	summer
zabalik	open
zapata	shoe

Exercise 12 Which of the shop signs above are the following?

fishmonger's	butcher's	cake shop
tobacconist	chemist's	bookshop
ironmonger's	carpentry shop	shoe shop
hairdresser's	bar	café
restaurant	hotel	

Exercise 13 Where would you find the following?

- ice-cream
- wine
- automobile parts
- kitchen furniture

Exercise 14 Review what you learnt in Unit 4 about Basque word formation. How many words in the above signs are related to words in English or other European languages? How many of them are composed of two words that have been joined together (like *book shop* or *hairdresser* in English)? How many are formed by adding a suffix to another word (like *bakery* or *tobacconist* in English)?

8 Erosketak (2)

Shopping (2)

In this unit we will look at:

Saying what you mean

- saying whose
- genitive -ko and the local cases
- saying what kind
- saying how
- 'if'
- linking and emphasizing
- impersonal verb forms
- being and having

There are some differences between this and other units. It has a single, longer reading – a piece of moderately formal prose – instead of the shorter, mostly conversational texts you are used to so far. Careful study of this reading and the following explanations and exercises, aided by the translation provided in the key, will give you new insight into Basque structure.

From this point, texts will not be followed by vocabulary lists. Look up new words in the general vocabulary at the end of the book. The special notes provided from Unit 9 onwards to guide you through each text will also be helpful.

Reading

Some shopping advice

Erosketak egitera joaten bazara Euskal Herrian, hiru aukera dauzkazu janaria eta abar erostean: denda txikiak, supermarketu

handia edo azoka. Bakoitzak bere alde onak eta alde txarrak ditu.

Eguneroko erosketa txikiak egiteko, errazena dudarik gabe fruta denda, harategi eta bestelako dendatxoetara jaistea da. Hauek herri eta auzo guztietan aurkitzen dira. Zarautz bezalako herri batean, dendari euskaldunak aurkituko dituzu; beraz euskara entzuteko eta erabiltzeko aukera ederra edukiko duzu. Bainaz ez hori bakarrik. Janariaz, eguraldiaz, auzoaz, edo beste edozertaz galdu nahi baduzu, edo berriketan aritu besterik gabe, aurrera beldurrik gabe. Bainaz kontuz! Dendariak ere seguraski zure bizitzaz zerbaite jakin nahiko du eta.

Dendatxo askotan primerako fruta eta barazkiak saltzen dira, batez ere hauck zuzenean jabearen baratzetik baldin badatoz. Prezioak, ordea, ez dira merkeenak izango, supermerkatu batzuekin konparatuta behintzat. Hortik aparte, janari marka edo mota bereziak bilatzen ari bazara, supermerkatu handi batean aukera zabalagoa eskainiko da seguraski. Gainera, badago haragia, arraina, fruta, barazkiak, ogia, eta bestelako gauzak leku berean erosteko erraztasuna.

Behin gutxienez joan beharko zenuke azokara, ikustera behintzat. Goizean bisitatzea da hoberena, bere kolore eta zarata guztiarekin ezagotu nahi baduzu, etxekoandreez eta saltzaileez beteta. Ez galdu esperientzia interesgarri hori. Gainera, euskara entzuteko beste aukera bat da.

Hamaika gauza desberdin saltzen dira azokan. Postu batzuk ia-ia denda txikiak dira. Bidearen erdian, edo mahai txiki batean, baserritar batzuek beren barazkiak dituzte salgai: letxugak, tomatteak, azenarioak, patatak eta garaiko berdura freskoak. Aldamenean norbaitek bertako gazta ederrak saltzen ditu; intxaurrek ere badauzka, nahi badituzu. Hor parcean arraina dago, fresko-freskoa. Eta begira lore horiek!

Hala ere, azokako gauzak ez dira beti izaten dendakoak baino merkeagoak; denetatik egoten da. Beraz, hobe da prezioa galduetza. Horrela, gainera, euskaraz egingo duzu. Ez badakizu zerbaitek izena, galdu!

Jendea zain badago erosteko, esan: ‘Nor da azkena?’ ‘Ni naiz’ erantzungo dizu norbaitek. Gero gogoratu noren atzean zauden eta errespetatu.

Normalean euskaldunek ez dute prezioa eztabaidatzen. Ez badaude ados, merkeago bat bilatuko dute. Bainaz hori bai, kalitate ona eskatzen dute beren janarian. Ez bazaizu gustatu tomate hori, saltzaileari esan, beldurrik gabe: ‘Hau neretzat oso berdea dago’

edo 'Ez al daukazu gorriagorik?' Hau egiten baduzu, haren errespetua lortuko duzu.

Saying what you mean

Saying whose



Study these sentences:

Elinen laguna Naroa dētzen Elin's friend is called Naroa.
da.

Josebaren laguna ez dator. Joseba's friend isn't coming.

The Basque equivalent of 'apostrophe-s' expressing possession, as in 'Elin's friend', is the suffix **-(r)en**. If you take a word with the suffix **-(r)ekin** meaning 'with' (see Units 5 and 6) and replace the letters **kin** by **n**, you will have the possessive form. Compare:

		<i>Possessive 'With'</i>	<i>Examples</i>
Proper names			
Ending in a consonant	-en	-ekin	Elinen, Elinekin 'Elin's', 'with Elin'
Ending in a vowel	-ren	-rekin	Josebaren, Josebarekin
Singular article	-aren	-arekin	lagunaren, lagunarekin
Plural article	-en	-ekin	lagunen, lagunekin
Nor? 'who'	noren	norekin	

Like all Basque case suffixes and apostrophe-s in English, the possessive ending is always added to the last word of a phrase:

beste mutilaren neska-laguna the other fellow's girlfriend

In Basque this last word is not always a noun, e.g.

ume txikiaren zapatak the little child's shoes

A chain of two or more possessors is possible, as in English:

Josebaren lagunaren ama Joseba's friend's mother

A phrase containing a possessor still needs to contain an article or determiner (see Unit 4); note, for example, that 'Joseba's friend' is not '**Josebaren lagun**' but **Josebaren laguna**, while 'Joseba's friends' is **Josebaren lagunak**. But another determiner may replace the article:

Laboaren kanta hau this song of Laboa's, this song by Laboa

Oskorriren kanta bat a song of Oskorri's, a song by Oskorri
Naroaren lagun batzuk some of Naroa's friends, some friends of Naroa's

A phrase with a possessor can take case suffixes, e.g.

Barazki hauek dendariaren baratzetik dator.

These vegetables come from the shopkeeper's garden.

But the possessor-phrase can also be used as a predicate, in which case it is 'headless' and usually has a suffixed article, e.g.

Kanta hori ez da Oskorrirena. Laboarena da.

That song isn't (one of) Oskorri's. It's Laboa's.

Kafe hau norena da? Whose is this coffee?

Note also:

Noren kantak entzun dituzu? – Mikel Laboarenak.

Whose songs have you heard? – Mikel Laboa's.

Sometimes the Basque possessive suffix should be translated by 'of' instead of apostrophe-s, e.g.

Zer da kantaren izena? What's the name of the song?

Haragi honen kolorea ez zait gustatzen.

I don't like the colour of this meat.

The possessive forms of the personal pronouns **ni**, **zu** and **gu**, which you already know, are exceptional in having no **n** at the end; but **zuek** is regular:

	Possessive	'With'
ni I	nire (nere)	nirekin (nerekia)
zu you (sg.)	zure	zurekin
gu we	gure	gurekin
zuek you (pl.)	zuen	zuekin

Exercise 1 Before attempting the following exercise, reread Dialogue 2 in Unit 6. Then practise using possessive forms by answering these questions as suggested:

1 Nor da Elin? Naroa_____ laguna da.

2 Eta Idoia, Antton, Joseba, Mikel eta Itziar? Beste lagun_____ izenak dira.

- 3 Txakolina norena da? Antton _____ da.
- 4 Eta beltza? Beltza Itziarr _____ da.
- 5 Kañak norenak dira? Elin, Naroa eta Joseba _____.
- 6 Noren kanta entzuten dute tabernan? Mikel Laboa _____ kanta ezagun bat.
- 7 Nor dago Eskozian? Elin _____ anaia.
- 8 Nor gehiago egon da Eskozian? Joseba _____ arreba ere egon da.
- 9 Nor dira Elin, Mikel, Idoia eta abar? Horiek Naroa _____ lagun batzuk dira.
- 10 Nork dauka azterketa bat? Naroa _____ beste lagun batek. Lagun horr _____ izena Olatz da.

Genitive -ko and the local cases

Study these sentences:

Hau Donostiako autobusa da. This is the Donostia bus.

Garaiko berdura freskoak dituzte salgai. They have green vegetables of the season for sale.

Elin Bangorkoa da.

Elin is from Bangor.

Nongoa zara?

Where are you from?

We have already seen how **-ko** can be added to words like **gaur** ‘today’, **euskaraz** ‘in Basque’, and so on, i.e. to adverbs and adverbial expressions, giving to these an adjectival function (page 115). But **-ko** is also often added to nouns and noun phrases with a genitive function. It is sometimes translatable by *of*, although as the above examples show this is not always the case.

Genitive **-ko** has a range of forms paralleling those of the ‘local’ cases, namely **-n** ‘in/on/at’, **-ra** ‘to’ and **-tik** ‘from’. It is therefore sometimes called the ‘local genitive’ to distinguish it from the possessive suffix **-(r)en**. This is a good place to give the endings of all the main ‘local’ cases, including genitive **-ko**:

	<i>'In/on/at'</i>	<i>'To'</i>	<i>'From'</i>	<i>Genitive</i>
Proper names				
Ending in a consonant	-en	-(er)a	-(e)tik/-dik	-(e)ko/-go
Ending in a vowel	-n	-ra	-tik	-ko
Singular article				
Ending in a consonant	-ean	-era	-etik	-eko
Ending in a vowel	-an	-ra	-tik	-ko
Plural article	-etan	-etara	-etatik	-etako

Genitive **-ko**, like possessive **-(r)en**, precedes the noun, and may also appear in predicative or headless structures. The most difficult question is when to use **-ko** and when to use **-(r)en**: this is something even Basques disagree about occasionally! If place or time is involved, use **-ko**: **etxeko andrea** ‘housewife, lady of the house’, **garaiko fruta** ‘fruit of the season’. If possession or a characteristic is expressed, use **-(r)en**: **emakumearen etxea** ‘the woman’s house’, **etxearen kolorea** ‘the colour of the house’. Above all, never use **-ko** with animate possessors: for example **emakumearen**, not ‘**emakumeko**’, for ‘the woman’s, of the woman’.

Exercise 2 Complete the translations of these sentences by choosing between the **-(r)en** and **-ko** alternatives shown. Give reasons.

- 1 What are the good points of small shops, (of) the supermarket, and (of) the market?

Zein dira _____ alde onak?

- (a) denda txikien, supermerkatuaren eta azokaren
- (b) denda txikietako, supermerkatuko eta azokako

- 2 Every day I pop down to the shop next door in order to buy something.

Egunero _____ dendara jaisten naiz zerbait eroastera.

- (a) aldamenaren
- (b) aldameneko

- 3 Many of Zarautz’s shopkeepers are Basque speakers.

_____ dendari asko euskaldunak dira.

- (a) Zarautzen
- (b) Zarauzko

- 4 You will have to answer the shopkeepers’ questions.

_____ galderak erantzun beharko dituzu.

- (a) Dendarien
- (b) Dendarietako

- 5 Prices in the small shops are not always the cheapest.

_____ prezioak ez dira beti merkeenak (izaten).

- (a) Denden
- (b) Dendetako

- 6 You should go to see the things in the market.

_____ gauzak ikustera joan beharko zenuke.

- (a) Azokaren
- (b) Azokako

- 7 The farmers at the tables sell their vegetables.

_____ baserritarrek beren barazkiak saltzen dituzte.

(a) Mahaien

(b) Mahaietako

8 I'm going to buy this woman's fish.

_____ arraina erosiko dut.

(a) Emakume honen

(b) Emakume honetako

9 Which things are cheaper, those at the market or those in the shops?

Zein gauza dira merkeagoak, _____

(a) azokarenak ala dendenak?

(b) azokakoak ala dendetakoak?

10 Where did you leave Monday's newspaper?

Non utzi duzu _____ egunkaria?

(a) astelehenaren

(b) asteleheneko

Saying what kind

There are a small number of **-ko** words, all ending in **-lako**, which express the idea of 'kind' or 'type'; these include:

honetako	this kind of
horrelako	that kind of
halako	that kind of, such a kind of
bestelako	another kind of
bezalako	like, such as
nolako?	what kind of?

Saying how

The most common general-purpose suffix for forming adverbs, comparable to English *-ly*, is **-ki**, e.g. **ederki** lit. 'beautifully', **poliki** 'slowly', lit. 'nicely'. The variant **-gi** is seen in **ongi** 'well' but is otherwise rare.

Also, by removing the **-ko** ending from the above **-lako** words, we obtain the following words ending in **-la** expressing manner:

honela	this way, like this
horrela	that way, like that
hala	like that, so
bestela	some other way, otherwise
bezala	like, as
nola?	how?

'If'

Study these sentences:

Erosketak egitera joaten If you go shopping ...
ba-zara ...

Eguraldiaz galduetu nahi If you want to ask about the
baduzu ... weather ...

Barazkiak onak dira The vegetables are good if they
jabearen baratzetik come from the owner's garden.
badatoz.

In Basque, 'if' is expressed not by a separate word but by a prefix attached to the auxiliary (if there is one) or to the main verb (if no auxiliary is used): **joaten ba-zara** 'if you go', **nahi ba-duzu** 'if you want', **ba-datoz** 'if they come, if they are coming'.

The affirmative particle that is sometimes attached to finite main verbs like **datoz** also has the form **ba-**, so that a form like **badatoz** is potentially ambiguous, meaning either 'they come' (affirmative) or 'if they come' (condition). However, there is rarely any confusion in practice, as they occur in somewhat different contexts.

In negative conditions ('if ... not'), the order is **ez ba-**, e.g.

Ez bazara etxera joaten ... or **Etxera joaten ez bazara** ...
 If you don't go home ...

This could also be translated as *Unless you go home ...*

Occasionally the untranslatable word **baldin** is placed in front of **ba-** 'if' to emphasize it, e.g.

jabearen baratzetik baldin badatoz
if they come from the owner's garden.

The *if*-clause is usually accompanied by another clause saying 'what will happen if'. In Basque, as in English, the verb here is usually in the future, although an imperative is also possible:

Gasteiza joaten bazara, zurekin joango naiz.
 If you go to Gasteiz, I'll go with you.

Gasteiza joaten bazara, deitu.
 If you go to Gasteiz, give me a call.

Exercise 3 Make up suitable endings for these sentences:

- 1 Bihar bero egiten badu ...
- 2 Nahi baduzue ...

- 3 Opari polit bat ikusten badut ...
- 4 Ezin bazara eterri gaur ...
- 5 Ez baduzu joan nahi gurekin ...

Now make up some more examples of your own.

Linking and emphasizing



Co-ordinating conjunctions are the commonest way of all to link ideas together. You already know the main Basque ones: **eta** 'and', **baina** 'but', **edo** 'or'.

Exercise 4 Find all the examples of **eta**, **baina** and **edo** in the first two paragraphs of the reading. What functions do they have?

Here are some other very common linking words you should learn to recognize:

gainera	furthermore, additionally, also
beraz	therefore, so, consequently
hala ere	however

The above words often stand at the beginning of a sentence. The following, on the contrary, must come after either a whole clause or the first part of one:

berriz or ordea	but, in contrast, however, on the other hand
behintzat	indeed, certainly, at least

Another important linking word that never stands first in the sentence is **ere** 'too, also'; it can also mean 'either, neither' in negative sentences. **Ere** may be placed after the phrase it applies to, which comes first in the sentence, e.g.

Mikel ere etorriko da.	Mikel, too, will come.
Mikel ere ez da etorriko.	Mikel isn't coming either.

In elliptical sentences of the following type, it is reinforced as **ere bai** 'and ... also' or **ere ez** 'nor ... either':

Idoia etorriko da. Mikel ere bai.
Idoia will come. And Mikel too.

Alternatively, such elliptical sentences may be introduced by **Baita ...** 'And so ...' or **Ezta ...** 'And neither ...', in which case just **ere** is placed at the end:

Idoia etorriko da, baita Mikel ere.

Idoia will come, and so will Mikel.

In other contexts, *also* may be best translated by *gainera*.

Besides the above, written Basque is quite rich in phrasal linking or emphasizing expressions, a few of which also appear in our reading.

Exercise 5 Supply the missing words/phrases, then check against the text:

Eguneroko erosketa txikiak egiteko, errazena _____ fruta denda, harategi, eta bestelako dendatxoetara jaistea da. Zarautz _____ herri batean, dendari euskaldunak aurkituko dituzu; _____ euskara entzuteko eta erabiltzeko aukera ederra edukiko duzu. Bainam _____ Janariaz, egural-diaz, auzoaz edo beste edozertaz galdetu nahi baduzu, edo berriketan aritu _____, aurrrera beldurrik gabe. Bainam kontuz! Dendariak ere _____ zure bizitzaz zerbait jakin nahiko du eta.

Dendatxo askotan primerako fruta eta barazkiak saltzen dira, _____ hauek zuzenean jabearen baratzetik baldin badatoz. Prezioak, _____, ez dira merkeenak izango, supermarketu batzuekin konparatuta _____. _____, badago haragia, arraina, fruta, barazkiak, ogia eta bestelako gauzak leku berean crosteko erraztasuna.

Impersonal verb forms

Study these sentences:

Hauek herri eta auzo guztietan aurkitzen dira.

These are found in all towns and neighbourhoods.

Denda askotan barazki onak saltzen dira.

Good vegetables are sold in many shops.

Any transitive verb may be made impersonal by using the intransitive auxiliary forms with it instead of the ordinary transitive ones. The intransitive auxiliary agrees with the noun that would represent the object of the non-impersonal verb. In other words, the object is converted into the subject of the impersonal verb. Often, the Basque impersonal can be translated into English using a passive construction. Compare:

<i>Normal</i>	<i>Impersonal</i>
Ogia saltzen dugu.	Ogia saltzen da.
We sell bread.	Bread is sold.
Barazkiak saltzen ditugu.	Barazkiak saltzen dira.
We sell vegetables.	Vegetables are sold.

Exercise 6 Either find the sentences in the reading that correspond to the following, or try your hand at translating them first!

- 1 A multitude of (**Hamaika**) different things are sold in the market.
- 2 In a large supermarket a wider choice is offered.

Being and having

Notice how *is* is translated into Basque in these sentences:

Errazena dendatxora jaistea da.	The easiest (thing) <i>is</i> to run down (descend) to the shop.
Hor parean arraina dago.	Opposite there, <i>there's</i> fish.

and how *has/have* is translated in the following:

Hiru aukera dauzkazu janaria erastean.
You *have* three choices when shopping for (buying) food.

Bakoitzak bere alde onak eta txarrak ditu.
Each *has* its good and bad points. (= Each has its good sides and bad sides.)

In the above examples, **da** is a part of the verb **izan**, while **dago** comes from **egon**; both **izan** and **egon** mean ‘be’. In the second pair of examples, **ditu** belongs to **izan** ‘have’, and **dauzkazu** belongs to **eduki**, also ‘have’. As you will have noticed, both the verb ‘be’ (e.g. **da**) and the verb ‘have’ (e.g. **dut**) have identical participles, **izan**. For example, **izan naiz** is ‘I have been, I was’, while **izan dut** is ‘I have had, I had’. The compound tenses of ‘be’ and ‘have’ are thus:

izan or egon naiz	I have been, I was
izan or eduki dut	I have had, I had
izango or egongo naiz	I will be
izango or edukiko dut	I will have
izaten or egoten naiz	I am (habitually)
izaten or edukitzen dut	I have (habitually)

Exercise 7 Make sure you understand the following sentences in the reading; check the translation if necessary.

Euskara entzuteko aukera edukiko duzu.

Prezioak ez dira merkeenak izango.

Azokako gauzak ez dira beti izaten merkeak.

Denetatik egoten da.

9 Asteburua

The weekend

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- the infix **-ta-**

Saying what you mean

- comparisons (2)
- purpose
- uses of the future tense
- 'about'
- alternatives and choices
- 'for'
- position: being specific
- the simple present tense

Talking about ...

- the weather
- restaurant food

Language and life

- eating out

Dialogue 1

On the beach

Elin and Naroa are sunbathing

NAROA: Krema ekarri al duzu? Bestela erreko gara.

ELIN: Tori. Ze beroa! Azkenean eguraldi ona.

NAROA: Bai, oso atsegina dago. Bainan aurten iaz baino euri gehiago egin du.

ELIN: Baliteke, baina hau gure eguraldia baino hobea da, dena dela. Zer moduz egongo da ura? Garbia?

NAROA: Nahikoa.

ELIN: Hotza egongo al da?

NAROA: Ez, epela. Joango al gara bainatzera?

ELIN: Itxoin. Eguzki pixka bat hartu ondoren.

NAROA: Ongi. Emaidazu egunkaria. Zerbait irakurri nahi dut Bosniari buruz.

(Later.)

ELIN: Ze bainu ederra! Ura zoragarria dago.

NAROA: Bai.

ELIN: Zer egin nahi duzu oporretan? Zarautzen gelditu?

NAROA: Kanpora atera nahi nuke. Bizkaira beharbada, edo Iparraldera. Zer iruditzen zaizu?

ELIN: Eta non egingo dugu lo? Hotelak garestiak al dira?

NAROA: Kanpinean merkea da.

ELIN: Nahi baduzu bihar Turismo Bulegora joango naiz galde-tzera.

NAROA: Ideia ona da hori. Galdetu Iparraldeko kanpinei buruz.

ELIN: Aizu, komunik ba al dago hemen?

NAROA: Gurutze Gorriaren aldamenean. Hara bazoaz, ekarri gero helatu pare bat txozna hartatik.

ELIN: Ze ideia ona. Nolakoak?

NAROA: Berdin zait. Bueno, txokolatezkoa.

ELIN: Bale. Orain arte.

(Still later.)

NAROA: Ze ordu da? Berandu izango da.

ELIN: Hemen daukat erlojua. Oraintxe begiratuko dut. Zazpi t'erdia! Joango al gara etxera?

NAROA: Bai. Goazen dutxatzera eta aldatzera, gauean afaltzera goaz eta.

ELIN: Ai ene! Azkenean erre egin gara. Begira zure bizkarra.

NAROA: Ba zurea ez dago hobeto!

Notes

Tori! Here you are! There you are! *when passing something to someone; you can also say Hartu!*

Aurten iaz baino euri gehiago egin du. It has rained more this year than last year (*note the Basque word order!*).

Hau gure eguraldia baino hobeada. This is better than our weather. **bainatzera** for a swim, *lit. 'to bathe'*

eguzki pixka bat hartu ondoren after sunbathing a while, *lit. 'after taking a little sun'*

Emaidazu ... Give me ... , i.e. Pass me ... ; with friends this is not impolite in Basque; you can also say *Eman* ...

Bosniari buruz about Bosnia

Ze bainu ederra! (roughly) That was lovely!

nahi nuke I would like (see pages 78–9)

Nahi baduzu ... lit. If you want ... , but the English equivalent is *If you like* ...

joango naiz galdetzera I'll go to ask, I'll go and ask

Aizu, ... I say ... ; note how this is used here to change the subject abruptly.

Hara bazoaz ... If you're going over there ...

Ekarri ... Bring ... ; note once more that the use of such a direct command among friends is not rude in Basque.

txozna hartatik from the stand over there

Berdin zait! I don't mind! I don't care!

Orain arte! lit. Until now! (as opposed to *Gero arte!* 'Until later!'); this means something like See you in a moment!

Berandu izango da. It must be late.

Oraintxe begiratuko dut could be translated: Let me have a look.

gauean afaltzera goaz eta as we are going out for dinner tonight; *goaz* 'we are going'; note the 'explanatory' use of *eta* in final position.

Ai ene! Oh my goodness! Oh my! The original meaning of *ene*, still found in some dialects, is 'my' (= *nire* or *nere*).

erre egin gara = erre gara we've got burnt, we're burnt; note this intransitive use of *erre* 'burn'; the inserted *egin* makes it more emphatic, a bit like we've gone and got burnt!

zurea ez dago hobeto: yours is no better (*hobeto* or *hobeki* are adverbial derivatives of *hobe* 'better', cf. *ondo/ongi* from *on* 'good').

Saying what you mean

Comparisons (2)

Study these sentences:

Hau gure eguraldia baino hobea da. This is better than our weather

Hau da Oskorriren zintarik berriena. This is Oskorri's newest tape.

In comparing two things in English, we put *than* before the second item, the standard of comparison; in Basque, we put **baino** after the standard. Thus **gure eguraldia baino hobea** ‘better than our weather’. While the comparative adjective (or adverb) often follows **baino** as here, this is not obligatory; in colloquial Basque we can also say **Hau hobea da, gure eguraldia baino**.

A noun qualified by a superlative adjective often takes the partitive suffix **-(r)ik** as in the second example above.

Exercise 1 Complete these sentences by inserting either **baino** or **-ik/-rik**, and translate them:

- 1 Hotelak kanpinak _____ garestiagoak izaten dira.
- 2 Hau da Zarauzko hotel _____ garestiena.
- 3 Zarautz askoz gertuago dago Donostiatik Bilbotik _____.
- 4 Elini txokolatezko helatua bainilazkoa (*vanilla*) _____ gehiago gustatzen zaio.

Purpose

Study these sentences:

Bihar Turismo Bulegora joango naiz galdetzera.

I'll go to the Tourist Office tomorrow to ask (and ask).

Euskara entzuteko eta erabiltzeko aukera daukazu.

You have a chance to hear and use Basque.

Basque verbs have no single form corresponding closely to what in English is called the infinitive, i.e. *to use*, *to ask* etc. To translate English infinitives into Basque, we must therefore look at their context. For example, you already know that if an infinitive is governed by ‘want’ or ‘would like’, the basic form ending in **-tu**, **-i**, **-n** etc. is used in Basque:

euskara erabili nahi dut	I want to use Basque
galdetu nahi nuke	I would like to ask

When the infinitive expresses purpose, i.e. when it is at all possible to replace it by *in order to ...* in English, the Basque equivalent is a verb form ending in either **-t(z)era** or **-t(z)eko**. These are formed by taking the **-t(z)en** form and replacing the final **n** by either **-ra** or **-ko**.

The **-t(z)era** form is used if the governing verb is one of going or coming, sending or bringing etc., in other words, of movement.

Most often, it is a form of **joan** 'go'. In this context we sometimes use 'and' in English instead of 'to', e.g. **joan galdetzera** 'go and ask'. If the governing word has nothing to do with movement and the infinitive simply expresses purpose, use **-t(z)eko**.

Exercise 2 Choose the appropriate verb form:

- 1 Joango al gara ____? (**bainatu/bainatzera/bainatzeko**)
- 2 Ordua da (*It's time*) etxera _____. (**joan/joatera/joateko**)
- 3 Zer eskatu (*order*) duzu ____? (**edan/edatera/edateko**)
- 4 Aurten Euskal Herrira _____ nahi nuke. (**joan/joatera/joateko**)
- 5 Goazen azokara erosketak: _____. (**egin/egitera/egiteko**)
- 6 Euskal Herrian gaude euskara _____. (**ikasi/ikastera/ikasteko**)
- 7 Supermerkatuan gauza asko daude _____. (**erosi/erostera/erosteko**)
- 8 Arraina eskatu (*order*) dut, eta ardoa _____. (**edan/edatera/edateko**)
- 9 Azokara joan beharko zenuke, _____ behintzat. (**ikusi/ikustera/ikusteko**)
- 10 Zinta hau _____. nahi dut. (**entzun/entzutera/entzuteko**)

Uses of the future tense



Exercise 3 Supply the missing words and then check your answers against the dialogue:

NAROA: Krema ekarri al duzu? Bestela (1) _____.

ELIN: Tori. Ze beroa! Zer moduz (2) _____ ura?
Garbia?

NAROA: Nahikoa.

ELIN: Hotza (3) _____ al _____?

NAROA: Ez, epela. (4) _____ al _____ bainatzera?

ELIN: Itxoin. Eguzki pixka bat hartu ondoren.

All four answers to the above exercise consist of verbs in the future tense. In (1), **erreko gara** 'we'll burn', a prediction is made about the future, but this is not the function of the other three examples.

In (4), **Joango al gara bainatzera?** 'Shall we go swimming?', the future tense is used in a question with a first-person subject to make a suggestion or to consult on what one should do, as with English *Shall we ... ?* The subject may be singular, like English *Shall I ... ?, e.g.*

Kontua eskatuko dut? Shall I ask for the bill?

The question may be replaced by a statement to express a higher degree of self-confidence, e.g.

Kontua eskatuko dut. I'll ask for the bill.

although other additions to the sentence may reduce its directness, as in:

Nahi baduzu lagunduko dizut. If you like I'll help you.

With the second person, questions in the future tense may serve to ask someone to do something, e.g.

Helatu pare bat ekarriko al dituzu?

Will/Would you bring a couple of ices?

although we saw in the dialogue that an imperative can also be used here: **Ekarri helatu pare bat.** Such requests can again be softened by additional phrases such as **hara bazoaz** in the dialogue, or simply **mesedez** ‘please’. Of course, a question in the future tense may also be used to ask what someone’s intention is, to make an offer, and with various functions, e.g.

Hemen egongo zara datorren Will you be here next week?
astean?

Kafe gehiago hartuko duzu? Will you have some more coffee?

Items (2) and (3) in the above exercise illustrate yet another common function of the future tense in colloquial Basque, namely to give one’s opinion or say that something is probably the case, rather than definitely so. For example, you can say to someone as they return from a swim:

Ura epela egongo da, ezta? I expect the water is warm, isn’t it?
and you might get a reply like:

Bai, oso goxoa dago.

In contrast, the use of the present tense, **Ura epela dago**, implies that you *know* that the water is warm. After the above exchange you might say to someone else:

Ura epela omen dago.

where **omen** conveys the fact that you have not acquired this information by first-hand experience, but are going on hearsay (see page 97).

'About'

Study these sentences:

Zerbait irakurri nahi dut Bosniari buruz.

I want to read something about Bosnia.

Janariaz, eguraldiaz edo auzoaz galdetu nahi baduzu . . .

If you want to ask about food, (about) the weather or (about) the neighbourhood . . .

Horretaz hitzegin dugu hondartzan.

We've been speaking about that on the beach.

The first sentence shows one way of expressing 'about (something)' in Basque: the thing 'about which' takes the dative suffix -(r)i (for the full set of dative endings see page 95) followed by **buruz**.

An alternative is to use the forms of the so-called instrumental case ending, whose basic form is -(e)z. With the singular article, this makes -az, and with the plural article, -ez. Thus for example:

mendiari buruz or mendiaz about/concerning the mountain

mendiei buruz or mendiez about/concerning the mountains

Sometimes an alternative form of the instrumental suffix, -taz, is used, particularly with determiners and pronouns, as the last example above illustrates. 'What about?' is **zertaz**.

Exercise 4 Answer these questions about the story:

- 1 Bainatu baino lehen, zertaz ari dira hitzegiten Elin eta Naroa?
- 2 Zeri buruz irakurri nahi du Naroak?
- 3 Zeri buruz hitzegiten dute Elinek eta Naroak bainatu ondoren?
- 4 Zertaz galdetuko du Elinek Turismo Bulegoan?

Grammatical nuts and bolts

The infix -ta-

Study these sentences:

Zer egin nahi duzu oporretan?

What do you want to do on (your) holidays?

Dendatxo askotan barazki onak saltzen dira.

Good vegetables are sold in many small shops.

Eseri izkinako mahai hartan.

Sit at that corner table.

Ekarri helatu batzuk txozna hartatik.

Bring some ice cream from that stand.

Look again at the table of case forms given on page 124 and note that the plural forms consist of -e- (for the plural) followed by the syllable -ta- plus the case suffix: **herrietako** (= **herri-e-ta-ko**) jaiak ‘village fiestas’, ‘(the) fiestas of (the) villages’, and so on for all the local cases.

This -ta- element also appears in both singular and plural demonstratives, e.g. **kale honetan** ‘in/on this street’, **kale hauetan** ‘in/on these streets’, in some determiners and pronouns (without the plural -e-), e.g. **askotan**, **gutxitan** (some people use **batetan** ‘in one’, although **batean** is generally preferred), and in some other kinds of noun phrase lacking an article, e.g. **bi herritan** (= **herri-ta-n**) ‘in two towns’. Finally, it also shows up in some forms of the instrumental ending (-taz), as we just saw.

Talking about . . .

The weather



Note these common weather expressions:

Eguraldi ona/ederra/txarra dago.

The weather is good/fine/bad.

Ze beroa/hotza!

Gosh it's hot/cold!

Zer egingo du bihar?

What will it be like tomorrow?

Hotz/Fresko/Bero egingo du.

It will be cold/cool/hot.

Euria egingo du.

It will rain.

Haizea/Lainoa/Ekaitza dago.

It is windy/misty/stormy

Some weather vocabulary:

eguraldi	weather	bero	hot
hotz	cold	epel	warm
fresko	cool	temperatura	temperature
euri	rain	elur	snow
zirimiri	drizzle	laino	mist
ilun	dark	kutsadura	pollution
haize	wind	ekaitz	storm

and of related interest:

eguzki	sun	ilargi	moon
izar	star	zeru	sky
hodei	cloud	negu	winter
udaberri	spring	uda	summer
udazken	autumn		

Dialogue 2

At the restaurant

A waiter helps Naroa find a free table

NAROA: Ba al dago mahairik libre?

WAITER: Zenbat zarete?

NAROA: Zazpi.

WAITER: Bai. Eseri izkinako mahai hartan, leihoaaren ondoan. Karta ekarriko dizuet.

(They look at the menu, then the waiter comes back to take their order.)

WAITER: Zer nahi duzue?

NAROA: Hasteko entsalada bat denontzat eta pikatzeko atera urdaiazpiko pixka bat, esparago batzuk eta arrain pastela.

WAITER: Eta bigarrena?

NAROA: Bi legatz saltsa berdean, eta bi makailu piperrekin ...

WAITER: Makailua ez zaigu gelditzen baina bixigu erreña birentzat daukagu, oso ona.

ELIN: Nork hartuko du nerekin?

MIKEL: Nik.

WAITER: Bixigu bat. Zer gehiago?

NAROA: Txuleta birentzat.

WAITER: Txuleta nola?

ITZIAR and JOSEBA: Gutxi egina.

WAITER: Eta edateko?

ITZIAR: Nork nahi du sagardoa?

SEVERAL: Nik.

NAROA: Sagardoa eta ura.

WAITER: Ardorik ez?

NAROA: Ez.

(Some time later.)

IDOIA: Zer moduz dago legatza?

- NAROA: Oso ona.
- ELIN: Nik Josebaren txuleta probatu dut eta oso goxoa dago.
- MIKEL: Ba bixigu hau primerakoa da.
- ANTTON (*calling the waiter*): Ogi gehiago ekarriko al duzu, mesedez?
- WAITER: Bai, noski.
- NAROA: Oso ona dago dena.
- WAITER: Eskerrik asko.
- JOSEBA: Zer egingo duzue oporretan, Naroa?
- NAROA: Horretaz hitzegin dugu hondartzan.
- ELIN: Ez dakigu nora joan, Iparraldera ala Bizkaira.
- ITZIAR: Edo joan Iruñera, San Ferminetara.
- NAROA: Ikusiko dugu.
- IDOIA: Kafeak hemen ala beste nonbait hartuko ditugu?
- SEVERAL: Kafetegi batean, ez?
(*At the end of the meal.*)
- WAITER: Kaferik edo koparik hartuko al duzue?
- NAROA: Ez, ez. Ekarri kontua.
- IDOIA: Nora goaz orain?
- ITZIAR: Goazen Kai-Txikira.

Notes

Zenbat zarete? How many are you? *Note the turn of phrase. An English-speaking waiter would ask For how many (people)? As usual, Basque is more direct.*

Eseri izkinako mahai hartan, leihoaaren ondoan. Sit at that corner table by the window.

Karta ekarriko dizuet. I'll bring you (*pl.*) the menu.

Hasteko ... For starters . . . , lit. 'To begin . . . '

denontzat for all of us, for everybody

pikatzeko lit. 'to peck'; what this means is that these dishes are to be shared as collective 'snacks' or 'hors d'oeuvres'.

atera bring out (of the kitchen, to the table); for the specific dishes, see the 'Talking about . . .' section below.

bigarrena second course

Makailua ez zaigu gelditzen. We have no cod left.

birentzat for two.

Nork hartuko du nerekin? Who will have it with me? *Elin is looking for a partner to share this double-portion fish.*

Txuleta nola? How do you want the steak?

gutxi egina rare, lit. 'little done'

goxoa tasty, good (*particularly of food*); *not to be confused with gozoa 'sweet'!*

Ez dakigu nora joan. We don't know where to go; *take note of this useful construction.*

Edo joan Iruñera ... *translatable as Why don't you go to Iruña ... ?*

Ikusiko dugu! We'll see! (*as in English*)

hemen ala beste nonbait? here or somewhere else?

Saying what you mean

Alternatives and choices

Study these sentences:

Kaferik edo koparik hartuko al duzue?

Will you have any coffee or liqueur?

Kafe hutsa ala ebakia?

Black coffee or white?

Look closely at the two questions shown here. An answer to the first could be **Bai** 'Yes please' or **Ez** 'No thank you'; whereas the normal replies to the second are **Hutsa** 'Black' or **Ebakia** 'White' (for more information concerning Basque coffee, see Unit 2). The second question asks for a choice to be made between alternatives. In such questions *or* is often translated **ala**. In other contexts, including most non-interrogative sentences, the translation for *or* is **edo**.

Exercise 5 Choose **edo** or **ala** to complete the following:

1 Kafea hemen _____ beste nonbait hartuko dugu?

2 Bixigua nahi baduzue, itxoin beharko duzue hamar minitu _____ ordu laurden bat.

3 Bizkaira _____ Iparraldera joan nahi dugu.

4 Ez dakigu nora joan: Bizkaira _____ Iparraldera.

5 Zer dago afaltzeko? – Badago arraina _____ txuleta.

'For' 

Study these sentences:

Ba al dago mahairik laurentzat? Is there a table for four?

Bixigua birentzat daukagu.

We have a sea bream for two.

Atera entsalada bat denontzat.

Bring us a salad for everybody.

The above examples illustrate one common way of translating the preposition *for* into Basque: a suffix which grammars call the ‘benefactive case’, formed by adding to the forms of the possessive genitive case the syllable **-tzat**:

	Possessive ‘For’	Examples:
Proper names		
Ending in a consonant	-en	-entzat Elinentzat ‘for Elin’
Ending in a vowel	-ren	-rentzat Josebarentzat
Singular article	-aren	-arentzat lagunarentzat
Plural article	-en	-entzat lagunentzat
Nor? ‘who’	noren	norentzat

Special care must be taken with the pronominal forms; it might be a good idea to memorize this little dialogue:

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------|
| A: Telefinoa! | Telephone! |
| B: Norentzat da? | Who's it for? |
| A: Zuretzat! | For you! |

	Possessive	‘For’
ni ‘I’	nire (nere)	niretzat (neretzat)
zu ‘you’ (sing.)	zure	zuretzat
gu ‘we’	gure	guretzat
zuek ‘you’ (plur.)	zuen	zuentzat

The benefactive case occurs most often with animate noun phrases, i.e. expressing ‘for whom’. However, it is often preferable to use the dative case, which can also express the idea of ‘for’, as in:

Atea irekiko diot Josebari. = **Atea irekiko dut Josebarentzat.**
I'll open the door for Joseba.

Elini opari bat erosi diot. = **Elinentzat opari bat erosi dut.**
I've bought Elin a present, or I've bought a present for Elin.

Note that when the dative is used the auxiliary agrees with it (e.g. *diot*), whereas it does not agree with a benefactive object (thus *dut*).

To express ‘what for’, another suffix, **-rako**, is sometimes used; this contains the ‘where to’ suffix **-ra**:

Tomate hauek hobeak dira entsaladarako.

These tomatoes are better for salad.

Seiluak nahi ditut Europarako.

I want some stamps for Europe.

This suffix is not to be used with animates.

If ‘for’ means either ‘on account of, because of, for the sake of’ or ‘in exchange for, in payment for, at the price of’, it must be translated in yet another way, using the suffix **-gatik** or **-gaitik**. This ending is sometimes added to the possessive forms (like **-tzat**), but sometimes no possessive ending intervenes:

Supermerkatura joaten naiz prezioengatik.

I go to the supermarket for (= because of) the prices.

Hartu hamar pezeta fotokopiarenengatik.

Here’s ten pesetas for (= in payment for) the photocopy.

Zergatik ‘why?’ is thus literally ‘because of what?'; this question is differentiated from **zertarako** ‘what for?', which asks about purpose rather than reason. The word **horregatik**, a common linking word, means ‘that’s why, for that reason, therefore’:

Gazta garestiegia dago. Horregatik ez dut erosi.

The cheese is too expensive. That’s why I didn’t buy any.

Another meaning of the suffix **-ko** besides those we have already seen is ‘per, for each’ as in:

Hamar pezeta kobratuko dizut orrialdeko.

I’ll charge you ten pesetas per page.

Note in this connection that ‘per cent’ is **ehuneko** (literally ‘per hundred’) preceding the percentage, e.g. **ehuneko zazpi** ‘7 per cent'; for this reason it is often written **%7**.

Exercise 6 Which of the above will be used to express each of the following? Fill in the blanks:

1 I want some stamps for England.

Seiluak nahi ditut _____.

2 The Basque Country doesn’t get many tourists owing to its weather.

Euskal Herrira ez dira turista asko etortzen _____.

- 3 Salad for two, please.
Entsalada _____, mesedez.
- 4 This is for my mother.
Hau nere _____ da.
- 5 Ten thousand pesetas is too much for a dictionary.
Hamar mila pezeta hiztegi _____ gehiegi da.
- 6 What did you do that for?
_____ egin duzu hori?
- 7 Who did you buy that for?
_____ erosi duzu hori? or _____ erosi diozu hori?
- 8 How much does the telephone cost per minute?
Telefonoak zenbat balio du _____?
- 9 How much (tip) shall we leave? – Ten per cent.
Zenbat utziko dugu? – _____.
- 10 That's too much for me!
Hori gehiegi da _____!

Position: being specific 

When a general indication of position is sufficient, the ‘local’ case suffix ending in *-n* is used, e.g. **Euskal Herrian** ‘in the Basque Country’, **hondartzan** ‘on the beach’, **etxean** ‘at home’, **mahaian** ‘on the table’ or ‘at the table’, and so on. The following examples contain various adverbs of position, which all have this *-n* ending themselves:

Ikusten al duzu eliza bat han aurrean?
Do you see a church *opposite/straight ahead* there?

Ondoan parke eder bat dago.
Next to (it) there’s a nice park.

Erdian baserritar bat barazkiak saltzen ari da.
In the middle a farmer is selling vegetables.

Atzean bazaude, egon zure txandaren zain.
If you are *behind/at the back*, wait your turn.

Komuna aldamenean dago.
The toilet is *next to (it, us . . .)/next door*.

Such position-specifying terms may be used together with a noun phrase to give a specific indication of position relative to something. They are placed after the latter, and are therefore called ‘postpositions’. Study these examples:

Ikusten al duzu eliza bat han gure aurrean?
 Do you see a church *opposite/in front of us*?

Elizaren ondoan parke eder bat dago.
 Next to the church there's a nice park.

Bidearen erdian baserritar bat barazkiak saltzen ari da.
 In the middle of the aisle a farmer is selling vegetables.

Norbaiten atzean bazaude, egon zure txandaren zain.
 If you are *behind* someone (else), wait your turn.

Komuna Gurutze Gorriaren aldamenean dago.
 The toilet is *next to* the Red Cross station.

These postpositions are usually preceded by a noun phrase with the possessive case ending -(r)en, just as in English we say 'on top of something', 'in front of something' and so on. But some position words, such as **kanpoan** 'outside', are not normally used in this way. The following table shows some of the most common position words used either adverbially (left column) or as postpositions (on the right):

aurrean	in front	(zerbaiten)	aurrean	in front of (something)
atzean	behind	(zerbaiten)	atzean	behind (something)
gainean	on top	(zerbaiten)	gainean	on top of (something)
azpian	underneath	(zerbaiten)	azpian	under (something)
goian	above	-		
behean	below	-		
barruan	inside	(zerbaiten)	barruan	inside (something)
kanpoan	outside	-		
ondoan	next to (it)	(zerbaiten)	ondoan	next to (something)
inguruau	around	(zerbaiten)	inguruau	around (something)
-		(A-ren eta B-ren)	arteau	between A and B

Exercise 7 Using words in this table, describe (a) the room you are in, and (b) the town where you live.

The simple present tense

Look at the verb forms (in italics) in these sentences:

Begira, zure trena (ba)dator. Look, your train is coming.

Begira, hantxe datoz. Look, there they come.

Ba al zatoz? Are you coming?

Autobus hau Zarautza doa. This bus is going to Zarautz.
Nora goaz orain? Where are we going now?

Ba al dakizu? – Ez, ez dakit. Do you know? – No, I don't know.
Elinek badaki euskaraz. Elin knows Basque.

These are present-tense forms composed of a single word, without an auxiliary. They contain an indicator of the subject's person or number in the shape of a prefix or suffix: for example, in **noa** 'I am going' the prefix **n-** stands for 'I'; in **goaz** 'we are going' the prefix **g-** stands for 'we' (the suffix **-z** marks it as plural).

The part in the middle, or stem, is **-oa-** for 'go' (also found in the form **joan**). The stem for 'come' is **-tor** which irregularly becomes **-to-z** in the plural. What is the stem for 'know'?

Simple present forms in Basque are mainly used for actions or states in effect at the time of speaking. Very few verbs indeed possess simple present forms in Basque, so learning these forms is easy. You already know the forms of **egon** and **eduki** (as well as those of **izan** 'be' and 'have'). Here are the forms for **etorri** 'come', **joan** 'go' (both intransitive) and for **jakin** 'know' (a transitive verb):

nator	I am coming	noa	I am going
zatoz	you are coming	zoaz	you are going
dator	she/he/it is coming	doa	she/he/it is going
gatoz	we are coming	goaz	we are going
zatozte	you (pl.) are coming	zoazte	you (pl.) are going
datoz	they are coming	doaz	they are going
dakit	I know		
dakizu	you know		
daki	she/he/it knows		
dakigu	we know		
dakizue	you (pl.) know		
dakite	they know		

Exercise 8 Provide the simple present verb forms that complete these sentences, and translate:

- 1 Hara ba _____, erosi helatu batzuk.
- 2 Gauean afaltzera _____.
- 3 Itziarrek esan dit ez _____ ela.

Talking about . . .

Restaurant food

Typical first courses

urdaiazpiko(a)	<i>cured ham</i> : considered a delicacy, there are several varieties, of which the most commonplace is called serrano and the best (and priciest) is jabugo ; it is served very thinly sliced with bread
esparago(ak)	<i>asparagus</i> : usually served with mayonnaise
arrain pastel(a)	<i>fish paté</i>
entsalada	<i>salad</i> : the standard kinds are (a) plain (normala) consisting of lettuce and tomato, used mostly to accompany a meat dish, and (b) mixta (pronounced 'mista'), which includes pieces of tuna, olives and other embellishments, and is eaten as a separate course; other, more experimental salads are also becoming fashionable
piper(rak)	<i>peppers</i> : cooked red peppers, sometimes mildly 'hot', and often stuffed (piper beteak) with meat or fish
arrayn zopa	<i>fish soup</i> : varies from place to place but is usually delicious!

Typical main courses

legatz(a)	<i>hake</i> : a very popular fish, served in a variety of ways
makailu(a)	<i>cod</i> : normally this will be a salted variety, tasty but quite different from fresh cod
bixigu(a)	a pricier fish, 'butterflied' and grilled with a vinegary sauce and usually served for two; very nice, despite the uninviting English translation <i>sea bream</i>
xerra	<i>steak</i>
solomo(a)/solomilo(a)	<i>filet mignon</i>
solomo(a)/lomo(a)	<i>a lean cut of pork</i>
txuleta	<i>a large steak</i> barbecued on the bone, sometimes for more than one person (it's best to ask first!)

eskalope(a)	<i>a breaded steak, usually veal</i>
arkume txuleta(k)	<i>lamb chops</i>
arkume erre(a)	<i>roast lamb</i>
oilasko(a)	<i>chicken</i>

Cooking styles

egosi(a/ak)	<i>boiled</i>
frijitu(a/ak)	<i>fried</i>
erre(a/ak)	<i>roast or grilled</i>
labean	<i>baked, roast ('in the oven')</i>
plantxan	<i>barbecued, grilled</i>
saltsan	<i>in sauce or gravy, stewed</i>
bete(a/ak)	<i>stuffed</i>

Accompaniments

patatak	<i>potatoes; chips (also papata frijituak)</i>
piperrak	<i>peppers (red or green, fried)</i>

Typical desserts

fruta	<i>fruit: fresh, unless otherwise stated</i>
flan(a)	<i>caramel custard</i>
izozki(a)	<i>ice cream (more informally, helatu(a))</i>
gazta	<i>cheese</i>
mami(a), gatzatu(a)	<i>fresh curd cheese</i>
arrozesne(a)	<i>rice pudding</i>
pastel(a/ak)	<i>cake(s)</i>
tarta	<i>cake, gateau</i>
intxaur(rak)	<i>walnuts</i>

A menu

*** GAZTELU-BERRI JATETXEA ***

HASIERAKOAK

Arrainzopa	Urdaiazpikoa
Entsalada	Legatz pastela
Entsalada mixta	Langostinoak
Entsalada epela (legatza eta endibiak)	Piper beteak
Entsalada berezia (garaiko barazkiekin)	Barazkien menestra
Esparragoak bi saltsarekin	Alkatxofak urdaiazpikoarekin Tortila ezberdinak

ARRAINA

Legatza saltsa berdean	Izokina plantxan edo labean
Legatz frijituua	Makailua saltsa berdean
Legatza plantxan	Bixigua (birentzat)
Rapea saltsan edo plantxan	Txipiroiak

HARAGIA

Xerra piperrekin	Arkume txuleta
Eskalopea patata frijiturekin	Arkume errean
Txuleta (birentzat)	Untxia saltsan
Solomoa plantxan	Oilasko errean

POSTREAK

Flana	Arrozesnea
Etxeko mamia	Etxeko intxaurtarta
Izozkia	Etxeko sagartarta
Etxeko kopa	Bizkotxoa
	Gazta

Language and life

Eating out

As a tourist in search of a quick bite, your needs may often be met in a bar with tables that offers sandwiches (**bokadiloak** or **ogitartekoak**) or other food items such as **pintxoak** (titbits), **arrazioak** (dishes, cold or hot) or **kazuelak** (hot dishes). If there isn't a list on the wall, ask the barperson what there is: **Zer dago/daukazu jateko? Nolako bokadiloak dauzkazu?** and so on.

In the Basque mentality, however, this does not constitute a meal, or at least not a normal one. A **bazkari** or **afari** (see page 108) is expected to last at least an hour (sometimes two or more!) to be employed in conversation as much as eating, and consists of distinct courses in generous quantities. Basques usually eat at home, but follow a similar pattern of behaviour when eating out.

The most economical way to obtain a 'proper' meal out is what is known as a **menu** (stressing the u), which the cheaper restaurants generally offer. This is a set-price meal, with a limited number of choices for first course, main course and dessert. Price and quality vary according to the establishment from mediocre to excellent. Bread, and wine or mineral water, are normally included, but not coffee or other beverages. The contents of the **menu** often vary daily, and may be displayed on a blackboard or not shown at all, in which case you must ask what there is (**Zer dago?**). First the waiter will list the choices for first course (**lehenengoa**) and when you have said what you want will go on to tell you what you can have for **bigarrena**. Finally he will probably ask you **Eta edateko?** to which you can respond **Beltza**, **Gorria** or **Ura**. He will ask you about dessert (**postre**) later.

The Basque word for a 'menu' in general, listing the dishes that a restaurant offers (not just the ones in the **menu**), is **karta**. Fish and meat dishes are often grouped separately, and there may be other groupings too, e.g. one for egg dishes. Vegetables are not normally served with the main course, but eaten separately, if at all, as a starter. Bread is served automatically to accompany all savoury dishes. Beer and soft drinks are not usually drunk with food, but may be asked for. Wine is drunk *with* – not after – a meal; although (or because!) readily available, overdrinking is frowned upon socially. Sadly, such behaviour on the part of northern Europeans often puts them in a bad light in the eyes

of Basques, brought up to view this as childish and uncouth. After a full meal, coffee and liqueurs (**kopak**) may be offered, and even cigars (**puruak**) (for more vocabulary, see Unit 2). A tip of around 10 per cent is acceptable, although not obligatory.

Exercise 9 Make up a conversation between yourself and a waitress at the Gaztelu-Berri restaurant in which you order a meal for yourself and a friend.

10 Bidaia prestatzen

Travel preparations

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- more about **zait** etc.

Saying what you mean

- indirect questions
- 'can' and 'may'
- diminutives
- the past perfect tense
- 'still' and 'yet'
- 'something'

Strategies for communication

- invitations

Talking about ...

- clothes

Dialogue 1

At the tourist information office

Elin enquires about camping sites in the Basque Country

ELIN: Egun on. Ba al daukazue zerbait Euskal Herriko kanpinei buruz?

ASSISTANT: Bai, folleto hau daukagu. Bizkaia, Gipuzkoa eta Arabako kanpinen informazioa ematen dizu. Alde honetan daukazu kanpinen zerrenda eta bakoitzaren zerbitzuak, eta hemen atzean mapatxoa. Hor ikus dezakezu non dauden.

ELIN: Baino Hegoaldekoak bakarrik agertzen dira. Egia esateko, Iparraldea interesatzen zait.

- ASSISTANT:** Horretaz ere badaukagu zerbait, (*calling another assistant*) ezta Manu?
- MANU:** Bai. Oraintxe ekarriko dizut. Gidaliburu hau dago, ‘Europako 2000 Akanpaleku’, eta Frantzia begiratuz gero ... Noski bakarrik hoberenak agertzen dira hemen. Egon, askoz kanpin gehiago daude.
- ELIN:** Nork jakin dezake gehiago haietaz?
- MANU:** Ba, ez dakit. Agian Donostian informazio gehiago egon daiteke. Bestela, Iparraldean zaudenean, hango herri guzietan turismo bulego bat dago eta esango dizute. Nahi baduzu fotokopiatu dezaket liburu hone-tako informazioa.
- ELIN:** Bai, mesedez.
- MANU:** Itxoin pixka bat. (*He starts towards the back room, then, turning back to Elin:*) Hamar pezeta kobratu behar dizut orrialdeko.
- ELIN:** Bai, bale.
- (Later.)**
- MANU:** Iparraldekoak ... bi orrialde hauetan daude. Hortaz hogei pezeta. Beste folletoan bezala, hemen duzu akanpalekuen taula, bakoitzaren ezaugarriek: non dauden, noiz dauden irekita, telefono zenbakia, zerbitzuen zerrenda, prezioa, eta abar.
- ELIN:** A, oso ondo. Eskerrik asko. Hogei pezeta, ezta?
- MANU:** Bai. Eraman dezakezu beste folletoa ere, dohainik da.
- ELIN:** A, bale. Agur.
- MANU:** Bai, gero arte.

Notes

ematen dizu	it gives you
alde honetan	on this side
ikus dezakezu non dauden	you can see where they are
Hegoaldekoak	the ones in the South
egia esateko	to tell the truth, actually
interesatzen zait	I'm interested in (<i>lit. 'interests me'</i>)
horretaz	about that
‘Europako 2000 Akanpaleku’	‘2000 European Campsites’
Frantzia begiratuz gero	if you look under France
hoberenak	the best ones

Egon ...

askoz kanpin gehiago daude
**Nork jakin dezake gehiago
 haietaz?**
egon daiteke
Iparraldean zaudenean
esango dizute
fotokopia(tu) dezaket
liburu honetako informazioa
kobratu behar dizut
bi orrialde hauetan
beste folletoan bezala
non dauden ...
eraman dezakezu

In fact ... (*the basic form of the verb in the main clause preposed*)

there are many more campsites
 Who may know more about them?
 there may be
 when you're in the North
 they'll tell you
 I can photocopy
 the information in this book
 I have to charge you
 on these two pages
 as in the other leaflet
 where they are ...
 you may take

Saying what you mean

Indirect questions

Study these sentences:

Hotela non dago?

Where is the hotel?

Noren atzean zaude?

Who are you behind?

Autobusa noiz dator?

When is the bus coming?

Nor naiz?

Who am I?

**Galdetu diot gizonari hotela
 non dagoen.**

I'll ask the man where the hotel is.

Gogoratu noren atzean zauden.

Remember who you are behind (in the queue).

Ez dakit autobusa noiz datorren.

I don't know when the bus is coming.

Ba al dakizu nor naizen?

Do you know who I am?

The sentences on the left are examples of direct questions; on the right, these questions are subordinated or embedded, becoming what are known as indirect questions. In Unit 6 you learnt that indirect statements in Basque have the suffix -(e)la attached to the verb, e.g.

Itziarrek esan dit Olatz ez datorrela.

Itziar told me that Olatz isn't coming.

In indirect questions the suffix on the verb is -(e)n, not -(e)la, e.g.

Itziarrek ez dit esan Olatz noiz datorren.

Itziar didn't tell me when Olatz is coming.

If or *whether* introducing an indirect question in English are not translated into Basque:

Ez dakit Olatz etorriko den.

I don't know whether Olatz will come.

The last example shows that when there is an auxiliary, this part of the verb takes the -(e)n suffix.

Exercise 1 Translate into Basque:

- 1 Do you see where Ondarroa is?
- 2 I'd like to know where the campsites are and when they are open.
- 3 If you like, I'll tell you how much it costs.

Grammatical nuts and bolts

More about zait etc. 

Study these sentences:

A: Nolako helatua nahi duzu? What type of ice cream would you like?

B: Berdin zait. I don't mind.

A: Zer iruditzen zaizu? What do you think (of it)?

B: Ondo iruditzen zait. I think it's fine.

Iparraldea interesatzen zait. I'm interested in the North.

Zure zapata berriak gustatzen zaizkit. I like your new shoes.

Neri bixigua gustatzen zait. I like sea bream.

You already know the following verb forms:

zait	is to me	zaizkit	are to me
zaizu	is to you	zaizkizu	are to you
zaio	is to her/him/it	zaizkio	are to her/him/it
zaigu	is to us	zaizkigu	are to us
zaizue	is to you (pl.)	zaizkizue	are to you (pl.)
zaie	is to them	zaizkie	are to them

These are forms of the verb **izan** ‘to be’ used when the subject is third-person singular (**zait** etc.) or third-person plural (**zaizkit** etc.) if there is a dative indirect object (but no direct object). The endings agree with the dative object in person and number. This meaning is seen in an expression like **Berdin zait** ‘It’s the same to me’, hence ‘I don’t mind’ or ‘I don’t care’. With intransitive verbs taking a dative indirect object like **gustatu** ‘be agreeable to’, **iruditu** ‘seem’, **interesatu** ‘be of interest to’ and **gelditu** ‘remain to’, the above forms function as auxiliaries. The English translation often ‘turns the verb around’, so to speak, which can be confusing. For example, **Zure zapatak gustatzen zaizkit** is literally ‘Your shoes are agreeable to me’, but in English we say *I like your shoes*.

Exercise 2 Translate the following, first as literally as possible, then as idiomatically as possible, e.g.

Ardo hau gustatzen zait.

This wine is agreeable to me. I like this wine.

- 1 Berdin zait nora joaten garen.
- 2 Iruditzen zaizu euria egingo duela?
- 3 Zenbat egun gelditzen zaizkio Elini Euskal Herrian egoteko?
Bi aste.

Saying what you mean

‘Can’ and ‘may’ 

Study these sentences:

Mapatxoan ikus dezakezu non dauden akanpalekuak.

You can see where the campsites are on the (little) map.

Eraman dezakezu beste folletoa ere, dohainik da.

You can/may take the other leaflet too, it’s free.

Agian Donostian informazio gehiago egon daiteke.

Perhaps there may be more material in Donostia.

The most common way to express the possibility of something, i.e. ‘can’ or ‘may’, is by means of special auxiliary forms with this function. As usual in Basque, there are distinct intransitive and transitive forms, the former agreeing with a subject by means of prefixes and the latter by means of suffixes:

naiteke	I can (<i>intransitive</i>)	dezaket	I can (<i>transitive</i>)
zaitezke	you can	dezakezu	you can
daiteke	she/he/it can	dezake	she/he/it can
gaitezke	we can	dezakegu	we can
zaitezkete	you (pl.) can	dezakezue	you (pl.) can
daitezke	they can	dezakete	they can

These forms can be translated with *may* as well as *can*. The transitive forms given are those for a third-person singular direct object. If the object is plural, the forms start with **ditz-a-** instead of **deza-**, e.g.

Folleto hauek eraman ditzakezu.

You can/may take these leaflets.

In formal Basque and some dialects, the main verb form used with these auxiliary forms is a shortened stem without the endings **-tu**, **-du**, **-i**, e.g. **ikus dezakezu**, **etor daiteke**, **fotokopia dezaket** etc. (from **ikusi**, **etorri**, **fotokopiatu**), but in many areas the fuller forms are preferred in informal speech, thus **fotokopiatu dezaket** and so on. Verbs in **-n** are never shortened: **joan zaitezke** etc.

For the commonest way to express 'cannot', see page 46.

Exercise 3 Imagine a friend from the Basque Country is thinking of visiting your town. Tell her about all the things she can do there.

Diminutives

Study these words:

denda bat	a shop
mahai bat	a table
ume bat	a child
mapa bat	a map
kafe bat	a (cup of) coffee
Xabier	Xabier

dendatxo bat	a little shop
mahaitxo bat	a little table
umetxo bat	a little child, a baby
mapatxo bat	a little map
kafetxo bat	just a quick cup of coffee
Xabiertxo	(familiar form of name)

The forms on the right are called 'diminutives'. Sometimes they refer to a small or incomplete specimen of the notion designated by the basic word. A **mapatxo**, for example, could be either a small map or, say, an informal sketch indicating a location. Diminutives may provide a form of understatement, as when modestly offering

missing page

- ELIN: Bai, deitu baina datorren astean ez naiz hemen egongo.
- XABIER: Zer ba?
- ELIN: Naroak oporrak hartzen ditu eta kanpinean goaz.
- XABIER: Ze ederki! Eta nora zoazte?
- ELIN: Iparraldera. Naroak behin uda batez hango herri batean lan egin zuen eta jendea ezagutzen du.
- XABIER: Ze enbidia! Bueno ba, ongi pasa eta buelta arte! Deituko dizut.
- ELIN: Bale, hurrengo arte. Ondo segi, eta suertea azterketekin!
(*Hangs up.*)
- NAROA: Nor da Xabier hori?
- ELIN: Bilbotik Donostiarako autobusean ezagutu nuen. Gero Donostian tren geltokiraino etorri zen nerekin. Oso mutil jatorra da.
- NAROA: Noizbait ezagutzeko aukera izango al dut?
- ELIN: Bai, orain azterketetan dago baina lasai, ezagutuko duzu!

Notes

Hobe da bakoitzak bere motxila eramatea. It's better for each to carry her own backpack.

lo egiteko zaku sleeping bag

kamiseta, bakero etc.: see '*Talking about ... Clothes*' on page 164
joan nintzen I went

buelta bat eman nuen I went for a walk

gauza handirik ez not much (*lit. 'no great thing'*)

lasai ibili naiz I've been taking it easy

Gutxi gelditzen dira. There aren't many left, (*here*) I've nearly finished.

azterketak bukatu eta gero after your exams (are finished)

Zer ba? How come?

kanpinean goaz we're going camping

Ze enbidia! Lucky you! (*lit. 'What envy (I feel)!'*)

Ongi pasa eta buelta arte! Have a good time and I'll see you when you get back!

Ondo segi! Keep well!

geltokiraino to the station, as far as the station

oso mutil jatorra a very nice fellow

ezagutzeko aukera a chance to meet (him)

Saying what you mean

The past perfect tense

Study these sentences:

Atzo lagunekin afaltzera joan nintzen.

Last night (yesterday) I went out for dinner with friends.

Xabier geltokiraino etorri zen nerekkin.

Xabier accompanied (came with) me as far as the station.

Itsasertzetik buelta bat eman nuen.

I went for a walk along the seafront.

Ondoren parranda pixka bat egin genuen.

Afterwards we did a bit of 'partying'.

You have already learnt the present perfect tense (see Unit 6), which is used in Basque either to say what *has happened* or what *has been happening*, e.g.

Zer gehiago egin duzu Zarautzen?

– Gauza handirik ez, lasai ibili naiz.

or else to say *what happened* at a particular time today, e.g.

Nere lagun galesa, Elin, gaur iritsi da.

Another tense, the past perfect, is used to say *what happened* at some time earlier than today.

The past perfect is formed with the past auxiliaries, the most important forms of which are shown here. As the glosses show, these also (like their present-tense counterparts) do double duty as the verbs 'to be' and 'to have' in the past tense.

Intransitive auxiliary

nintzen	I was
zinen	you were
zen	she/he/it was
ginen	we were
zineten	you (pl.) were
ziren	they were

Transitive auxiliary

nuen	I had	nituen	I had
zenuen	you had	zenituen	you had
zuen	she/he/it had	zituen	she/he/it had
genuen	we had	genituen	we had
zenuten	you (pl.) had	zenituzten	you (pl.) had
zuten	they had	zituzten	they had

+ SG.
OBJ.

+ PL.
OBJ.

Notice that in the past transitive forms agreement with the subject is marked by prefixes, not suffixes as in the present. Note also that third-person past forms start with **z-**, not with **d-** as in the present. Finally, observe that all past-tense forms end in **-n**.

The final **-n** of past-tense forms is dropped when adding either the **-n** of indirect questions (whose form is identical) or the **-la** of indirect statements:

Badakit Elin etorri zela.
Ez dakit noiz etorri zen.

I know that Elin came.
I don't know when she came.

Exercise 4 Say what you did yesterday (atzo).

'Still' and 'yet'

Exercise 5 Examine these different ways of expressing the time concepts 'still' and 'yet' in Basque, often by means of a verb rather than with the adverb **oraindik**:

Xabier ez dago oporretan oraindik. Xabier isn't on holiday yet.

Elin oraindik txuleta jaten ari da. Elin is still eating her steak.

Azterketa gutxi gelditzen dira. Not many exams are left./There aren't many more exams to go.

Xabierri azterketa gutxi gelditzen zaizkio. Xabier doesn't have many more exams to go.

Azterketa gutxi falta dira bukatzeko. (similar meaning)

Xabierri azterketa gutxi falta zaizkio bukatzeko. (similar meaning)

Xabierrek eta Elinek Xabier and Elin went on
hitzegiten jarraitu zuten. (continued) talking.

'Something'

Note the following sets of words:

zer	what?	zerbait	something
nor	who?	norbait	someone, somebody
non	where?	nonbait	somewhere
noiz	when?	noizbait	sometime
nola	how?	nolabait	somehow

Exercise 6 Can you complete these sentences?

Ez badakizu _____ izena, galdetu.

If you don't know the name of something, ask.

Galdetu _____: 'Zu al zara azkena?'

Ask somebody: 'Are you the last one (in line)?'

_____ irakurri nahi dut Bosniari buruz.

I want to read something about Bosnia.

Goazen _____ hartzera!

Let's go and have a drink.

Kafeak hemen ala beste _____ hartuko ditugu?

Shall we have coffee here or somewhere else (other)?

Ba al daukazue _____ Euskal Herriko kanpinei buruz?

Have you got anything on camp-sites in the Basque Country?

Uste dut _____ intxaurrek saltzen dituela hemen.

I think someone sells walnuts here.

Gelditu egingo gara _____.

We'll arrange to meet sometime.

_____ jakin nahi nuke zure bizitzaz Euskal Herrian.

I'd like to know something about your life in the Basque Country.

Strategies for communication

Invitations



Exercise 7 Study these exchanges, then cover the Basque and translate back from the English:

(a)

- | | |
|--|---|
| A: Gure etxera etorri behar duzu noizbait. | You should come over to our place sometime. |
| B: Ondo. | All right. |
| A: Zer moduz datorren asteburuan? | How about next weekend? |
| B: Ez dakit oraindik. Deituko dizut ostiralean. | I don't know yet. I'll give you a call on Friday. |
| A: Bale. Agur ba. Eta deitu! | Okay. 'Bye now. Remember to call. |
| B: Bai, bai, lasai. Beno ba, gero arte. | Yes, don't worry. Well, I'll be seeing you then. |

(b)

- | | |
|---|--|
| A: Zergatik ez zara etortzen bazkaltzera bihar? | Why don't you come over for lunch tomorrow? |
| B: Gustora etorriko nintzateke, baina ezin dut bihar. Azterketa bat daukat hurrengo astean eta asko ikasi behar dut. | That would be nice (I'd come gladly), but I can't tomorrow. I have an exam next week and I have a lot of studying to do. |

Talking about . . .

Clothes

The following are names of common articles of clothing and related items of vocabulary:

arropa	clothes
kamiseta	vest, T-shirt
alkondara	shirt
jertse	sweater
praka	(pair of) trousers
bakero	(pair of) jeans
gona	skirt

soineko	suit
azpiko arropa	underwear
kulero	(pair of) knickers
galtzontzilo	(pair of) underpants
galtzerdi	stocking, sock
bularretako	bra
pijama	(pair of) pyjamas
bainu jantzi	swimsuit
txamarra	jacket, coat
beroki	coat
zira	raincoat
jantzi	wear, put on
erantzi/kendu	take off
oinetako	shoe, (item of) footwear
zapata	(leather) shoe
zapatila	slipper, sneaker
sandalia	sandal
espartin	espadrille
bota	boot
zenbaki	size, number
taila	size
kolore	colour
gerriko	belt
txapel	cap
betaurtekoak	glasses
euritako	umbrella
poltsa	bag, handbag
erloju	watch
eraztun	ring
belarritako	earring
zuri	white
beltz	black
gorri	red
laranja	orange
lartsoa	pink
berde	green
hori	yellow
urdin	blue
marroi	brown
gris	grey
argi	light
ilun	dark

Those nouns preceded by '(pair of)' in English refer to one pair when in the singular in Basque, e.g. **bakero bat** 'a/one pair of jeans'. For 'Where are my jeans?', referring to one pair, either **Non dago nere bakeroa?** or **Non daude nere bakeroak** is possible.

Reading

Discover the Lea-Artibai region!

Haran berdeak, mendi paketsuak, hondartza atseginak eta kai koloretsuak gustatzen bazaizkizu, hauek guztiak Bizkaiko Lea-Artibai eskualdean topatuko dituzu . . .

- * Barnealdean **MARKINA-XEMEIN**, inguruko nekazal herrien zerbitzugunea. Igo Oiz mendira edo bisitatu Arretxinagako eliza eta Ubillaga-Urberoagako bainu-etxea.
- * Itsasaldean **ONDARROA**, Txomin Agirre idazle ospetsuaren jaioterria eta Bizkaiko arrantza-portu nagusia. Ikusi Andra Mari eliza gotikoa eta Likona dorrea. Ekiialdera, Saturraran hondartza; mendebaldera, kostaldeko bide zoragarria Lekeitioraino.
- * **LEKEITIO**, herri arrantzale eta turistikoa. Santa Maria eliza eta Uriarte jauregia. Hondartza, ugarte eta kai ikusgarriak.
- * Ez ahaztu **BERRIATU**, IPAZTER eta AMOROTOKO haitzuloak.

Aurten, zatoz Lea-Artibaira!

After trying to understand the above tourist information, check the translation in the key.

11 ‘Hortik zehar’

On the road

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- verbal nouns
- more about **diot** etc.
- participles

Saying what you mean

- saying which way (1, 2)
- instrumental -z and adjectival -zko

Doing things with words

- ‘let’s ...’ / plans and proposals
- getting permission, and prohibitions
- expressing uncertainty or opinion

Talking about ...

- the car and road travel
- accommodation

Language and life

- dialects and varieties of Basque

Dialogue 1

Starting the journey

Elin and Naroa set out

ELIN: Sartuko al ditut motxilak eta denda kotxearen malcteroan?

NAROA: Bai. Nik bitartean etxeko ura eta argia kenduko ditut. Ez ahaztu pasaportea. Mugan eskatuko dizkigute.

(In the car.)

ELIN: Dena prest!

NAROA: Kotxea izan ezik. Abiatu baino lehen gasolindegitik pasa nahi dut gurpilen presioa begiratzera eta gasolina hartzera.

(*At the petrol station.*)

ATTENDANT: Zenbat nahi duzu?

NAROA: Depositoa bete ... Aizu, gurpilen presioa begiratzeko ... ?

ATTENDANT: Hor daukazu haizea. Nahi al duzu laguntza?

NAROA: Ez, ez, moldatuko naiz.

ATTENDANT: 3.500 pezeta.

NAROA: Tarjetarekin ordainduko dut.

ATTENDANT: Orduan pasa bulegora. (*At the desk.*) Sinatu hemen, mesedesz. Zure txartela.

NAROA: Agur.

(*On the road.*)

ELIN: Nola joango gara? Autopistaz ala errepidetik?

NAROA: Iruditzen zait orain hobe dela autopista hartzea mugaraino azkarragoa delako, baina gero errepidetik jarraitzea Donibane Lohitzuneraino. Gehiago ikusten da.

ELIN: Nik mapa helduko dizut.

Notes

sartuko ditut I'll put (them) in (*but sartuko naiz 'I'll go in'*)

kenduko ditut (here) I'll turn (them) off

ez ahaztu don't forget

eskatuko dizkigute they'll ask us for them

Dena prest! Everything is ready! ('is' understood)

kotxea izan ezik except for the car

abiatu baino lehen before setting out

gasolindegitik pasa go by the petrol station

Hor daukazu haizea. The air pump's over there, lit. 'There you have the air.'

Nahi al duzu laguntza? Do you want me to help? ('me' understood)

Moldatuko naiz. I'll manage.

tarjeta or txartela card (synonyms; *tarjeta* is less formal)

mugaraino as far as the border

mapa helduko dizut I'll hold the map for you

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Verbal nouns

Study these sentences:

Hobe da autopista hartza mugaino, gero errepidetik jarraitza.

It is better to take the motorway as far as the border, then to continue by the main road.

Nahi al duzu laguntza?

Do you want (me) to help?

You already know that verbs have forms in **-t(z)en**, **-t(z)eko** and **-t(z)era**. These consist of a basic part **-t(z)e** together with various suffixes. This **-t(z)e** form has various other uses, and is known as the verbal noun, because it functions as a noun denoting an action. Since it is a noun, it generally takes the singular article and so, when used as a direct object or a subject (of an intransitive verb), appears in the form **-t(z)ea**. Thus **hartza** means ‘the act of taking’, and **laguntza** ‘the act of helping’, and **edatea** ‘the act of drinking’.

Exercise 1 Choose one of the following to complete each sentence: **edatea, egitea, erretza, ikastea, joatea**.

- 1 Gustatzen zait zinera _____.
- 2 Gehiegi _____ txarra da.
- 3 Autobusetan _____ debekatuta dago.
- 4 Nahi baduzu zerbait _____, esan!
- 5 Zaila zen cuskara _____?

More about diot etc.

Compare these sentences:

Mugan pasaportea eskatuko dizute. At the border they'll ask you for your passport.

Mugan pasaportea eskatuko dizkigute. At the border they'll ask us for our passports.

The **diot**-type auxiliary forms are the most complicated because they show agreement with three parts of the sentence: the subject,

the direct object and the indirect object. Luckily, their formation is very regular. The direct object must be third-person but may be singular (forms beginning with **di-**) or plural (beginning with **dizki-**). The person of the subject and of the indirect object is marked by suffixes, with subject markers coming last.

Thus **dizute** consists of **di-** (so the direct object is singular, ‘it’) plus **-zu-te** ‘they ... to/for/from/of you’, and **eskatuko dizute** means ‘they will demand it of you’, i.e. ‘they will ask you for it’. **Dizkigute** is **dizki-** (so ‘them’) plus **-gu-te** ‘they ... to us’: **eskatuko dizkigute** ‘they will demand them of us’, ‘they will ask us for them’.

There is no suffix marking a third person singular subject (compare **du** ‘has’, **daki** ‘knows’ etc.), so **dizu** is ‘she/he ... it ... to you’, **dizkit** ‘she/he ... them ... to me’ and so on. But a third-person-singular indirect object is represented by **-o**, and a third-person-plural one by **-e** (compare **zaio**, **zaie**); thus **diozu** ‘you ... it ... to her/him’ etc.

The possible person-marking suffix combinations are as follows (‘he’ standing for ‘she’, ‘he’ or ‘it’, and so on):

-dazu	you ... to me	-zut	I ... to you	-ot	I ... to him
-t	he ... to me	-zu	he ... to you	-ozu	you ... to him
-dazue	you (pl.) ... to me	-zugu	we ... to you	-o	he ... to him
-date	they ... to me	-zute	they ... to you	-ogu	we ... to him
				-ozue	you (pl.) ... to him
				-ote	they ... to him
-guzu	you ... to us	-zuet	I ... to you (pl.)	-et	I ... to them
-gu	he ... to us	-zue	he ... to you (pl.)	-ezu	you ... to them
-guzue	you (pl.) ... to us	-zuegu	we ... to you (pl.)	-e	he ... to them
-gute	they ... to us	-zuetegu	they ... to you (pl.)	-egu	we ... to them
				-ezue	you (pl.) ... to them
				-ete	they ... to them

The present-tense auxiliary forms are obtained by adding one of the above suffix combinations to either **di-** or, if the direct object is plural, **dizki-**.

Exercise 2 What do these mean?

- 1 Liburu bat emango dizut.
- 2 Zer esan dizu emakume horrek?
- 3 Sartu etxean, kafe bat egingo dizuet.
- 4 Lagunei opariak erosi behar ditziegu.
- 5 Lagunek hiztegi bat ekarri didate.
- 6 Nere amak ez dit ezer (*anything*) eskatu, baina zerbait eramango diot.

Saying what you mean

Saying which way (1)

Study these sentences:

Iparralderantz goaz.

We're going towards the north.

**Autopista hartuko dugu mugaino, gero erreidea
Donibaneraino.**

We'll take the motorway as far as the border, then the main road to Donibane.

Nafarroa aldera/Nafarroarantz joaten bagara . . . ?

How about if we head towards/for Nafarroa.

Gasolindegitik pasa nahi dut gurpilak begiratzeko.

I want to go by the petrol station to check the tyres.

You already know how to say **non** 'where', **nora** 'where to' and **nondik** 'where from', but it is sometimes useful to talk more specifically about **norantz** 'in what direction, towards where' or **noraino** 'how far, as far as where'. The suffixes **-rantz** 'towards' and **-raino** 'as far as, up to' are the simple 'to' suffix **-ra** with the extra letters **-ntz** or **-ino** added on.

For 'in the general direction of' or 'to the . . . area' we can either use **-rantz** or place **aldera** after a noun: **mendirantz** or **mendi aldera** 'to(wards) the mountains'.

Nondik usually means 'where from', but sometimes it means 'which way' or 'through where'. For example:

Trena Zarauztik pasatzen da. The train passes through Zarautz.

But to emphasize the idea of crossing through somewhere, the post-position **zehar** ‘through, across’ is placed after the noun phrase (usually in the ‘in/at’ case), e.g.

Euskal Herrian zehar ibili ginen.

We travelled/wandered through/across/around the Basque Country.

Hortik zehar (the title of this unit), literally ‘through there’, is a colloquial expression meaning roughly ‘round and about’.

Exercise 3 Translate:

- 1 Xabier geltokiraino etorri zen nerekin.
- 2 Gaizki goaz (*We're going the wrong way*), bide hau ez doa mugarantz.
- 3 Gazte horiek hurrengo herriraino eramango ditut.
- 4 Nondik zoazte? Menditik.

Talking about . . .

The car and road travel

Here is some useful vocabulary:

kotxe/auto	car
bizikleta	bicycle
moto	motorbike
oinez joan	walk
autostop egin	hitch-hike
trafiko	traffic
giltza	key
ispilu	mirror
motore	engine
gurpil	wheel, tyre
zulatuta	punctured
zulo	hole, puncture
gatu	jack
haize	air
presio	(air) pressure
matrikula	licence number
aparkatu	park
aparkaleku	parking place, car park

garaje	garage
gasolindegia	petrol station
gasolina	petrol
gasoil	diesel oil
aberia	breakdown
hondatu/aberiatu	break down
konpondu	repair
taller	garage (for repairs)
ur	water
olio	oil
freno	brake
martxan jarri	start (an engine), turn on (a television etc.)
ibili	run, work (of engines, appliances etc.)
aurretatu	overtake
istripu	accident, crash
anbulantzia	ambulance
ertzain	policeman/policewoman
mapa	map
plano	streetmap, plan
kilometro	kilometre
errepite/karretera	road, highway
autobia	motorway
autopista	motorway (with toll)
peaje	toll, toll station
sarrera	entrance
irteera	exit
seinala	signal, sign
lanak	(road) works
muga	border
aduana(k)	customs, customs post

Dialogue 2

Looking for a place to stay

Elin and Naroa stop near Donibane Lohitzune to look for a campsite with vacancies

NAROA: Non dago hurrengo akanpalekua?

ELIN (*looking at the leaflet*): Donibane Lohitzune pasa eta lau kilometro aurrerago iparralderantz. ‘Itsas-Mendi’ du izena.

(They enter the information office to enquire.)

NAROA: Lekurik ba al dago?

RECEPTIONIST: Ez, betea da. Uste dut kostan zaila izanen dela deus aurkitzea.

NAROA: Bai, bideko akanpaleku guzietan galdetu dugu eta berdin esan digute.

RECEPTIONIST: Zendako ez zarete joaten barnealderat, eta Kanbon eta Baigorriñ galdetzen? Alde horretan badira akanpaleku anitz eta biziki politak.

NAROA: Bai, horixe egin beharko dugu. Eskerrik asko.

(Back in the car.)

NAROA: Nik uste dut gazte horrek arrazoia daukala.

ELIN: Bai. Ez da ideia txarra barrualdean hartzea akanpalekua. Handik nahi adina txango egin ditzakegu bai itsasaldera, bai mendialdera.

NAROA: Orduan joan gaitezen Baigorrira. Han egon nintzen lanean.

ELIN (*looking at the map*): Hori urrutti samar gelditzen da eta ia baziatzeko ordua da. Harantz abiatu baino lehen toki polit bat bilatu eta bertan baziatzea proposatzen dizut.

NAROA: Nik txoko bat ezagutzen dut Saran.

Notes

Donibane Lohitzune ‘St Jean de Luz’ in French

iparralderantz northwards, towards the north

beteta or betea full (*bete* ‘to fill’)

izanen dela that it will be (*izanen* = *izango*)

deus aurkitzea to find anything (*deus* = *ezer*)

badira there are (*alternative to badaude*)

nahi adina txango as many excursions as we like

joan gaitezen let’s go

urruti samar gelditzen da is rather a long way off

ia baziatzeko ordua nearly lunch time

harantz abiatu baino lehen before heading that way

bertan baziatzea have lunch there

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Participles

Study these sentences:

Kanpina beteta dago.

The campsite is full.

Nekatuta zaude?

Are you tired?

Folletoak ez du esaten kan-pinak noiz dauden irekita.

The leaflet doesn't say when the campsites are open.

Prezioak ez dira merkeak supermarketuarekin konparatuta.

The prices are not cheap (when) compared to the supermarket.

bixigu erreia

roast sea bream

Txuleta gutxi egina nahi dut.

I want my *txuleta* rare (little done).

The basic form of a verb can also serve as a participle, i.e. a kind of adjective; for example, **frijitu** means 'to fry', but **patata frijituak** are 'fried potatoes', i.e. 'chips'.

Participles have various uses, but they are often used as predicates of the verb **egon**, e.g. **Nekatua** or **Nekatuta nago** 'I am tired'. The article **-a/-ak** with participles is often replaced by a special suffix **-ta** (or **-da** after **n** or **l**). However, the article is also correct here, and **-ta/-da** must not be used when the participle is attributive, as in **bixigu erreia** (from **erre** 'to burn, roast etc.'), not '**bixigu erreta**'.

Exercise 4 Add the correct suffix, **-ta**, **-da**, **-a** or **-ak**, to these participles, and translate:

- 1 Dendak itxi_____ daude.
- 2 Leku hau bete_____ dago.
- 3 Oso nekatu_____ gaude.
- 4 Nere aitona hil_____ dago. (*hil* = die)
- 5 Piper bete_____ asko gustatzen zaizkit.

Saying what you mean

Saying which way (2)

The words 'here', 'there' and 'where' have the following suffixed forms:

	<i>'Here'</i>	<i>'There'</i>	<i>'Over there'</i>	<i>'Where?'</i>
Place where	hemen	hor	han	non?
To ...	hona	horra	bara	nora?
As far as ...	honaino	horraino	haraino	noraino?
Towards ...	honantz	horrantz	harantz	norantz?
From/through ...	hemendik	hortik	handik	nondik?
Belonging to ...	hemengo	horko	hangon	nongo?

Exercise 5 Supply the missing word to complete the translations:

- 1 Where are you going? Towards the town square. _____ zoaz?
Herriko plazarantz.
- 2 What's there? The market. Zer dago _____? Azoka.
- 3 Which way are you going? This way. _____ zoaz? _____.
- 4 How far are you going? Only this far. _____ zoaz? _____ bakarrik.
- 5 Where were you yesterday? Around. _____ egon zinen atzo?
_____ zehar.

Instrumental -z and adjectival -zko

Study these sentences:

Autopistaz joango gara?	Shall we go by motorway?
Nola etorriko zara? – Oinez.	How will you get here? – I'll walk (on foot).
Elinek euskaraz hitzegiten du.	Elin speaks (in) Basque.
Euskarazko libururik ba al daukazu?	Have you got any books in Basque?
Txokolatezko helatu bat nahi dut.	I want a chocolate ice cream.

The suffix **-z**, known as the instrumental case, has various uses. In Unit 9 we saw that it may be used to express 'about', in which case with the singular and plural article it takes the forms **-az** and **-ez** respectively, e.g.

Janariaz hitzegin genuen. We spoke about food.

Without an article, in the form **-z** (**-ez** after a consonant), the instrumental can express a number of ideas, including that of means or instrument: **oinez** 'on foot', **trenez** 'by train', **telefonoz** 'on the phone', **eskuz** 'by hand', **euskaraz** 'in Basque', **inglesez** 'in English',

zoritzarrez ‘unfortunately’ (lit. ‘by bad luck’), **nere iritziz** or **nere ustez** ‘in my opinion’.

By adding adjectival **-ko** (see Unit 7) to the instrumental, we get the compound suffix **-zko** which is found in numerous adjectival expressions, such as **euskarazko liburua** ‘Basque book’ (lit. ‘book in Basque’), **txokolatezko helatua** ‘chocolate ice cream’, **laranjazko zumoa** ‘orange juice’, **Bosniari buruzko artikulu bat** ‘an article about Bosnia’ (not ‘Bosniazko ... ’).

Dialogue 3



At the campsite

The friends sign in

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| NAROA: | Lekurik ba al duzue? |
| RECEPTIONIST: | Bai. Zenbat zarete? |
| ELIN: | Bi. Zenbat da gaua? |
| RECEPTIONIST: | Pertsona bakoitzeko 21 libera eta autoa berdin, hortaz, 63 libera. |
| NAROA: | Ondo. |
| RECEPTIONIST: | Fitxa hau bete behar da. Nola duzue izena eta nongoak zarete? |
| ELIN: | Elin Davies ... |
| NAROA: | Eta Naroa Ugartetxea. |
| RECEPTIONIST (puzzled, to Naroa): | Zu euskalduna zara, bestaldekoa, baina (turning to Elin) zu? |
| ELIN: | Ni Gales Herrikoan naiz. |
| RECEPTIONIST: | A. Euskaraz mintzatzen zara! |
| ELIN: | Bai. |
| RECEPTIONIST: | Badakizue zenbat gau geldituko zareten? |
| NAROA: | Hiru edo lau. |
| RECEPTIONIST: | Zuen kanpin karnetak edo pasaporte zenbakiak behar ditut. (Takes note) Mila esker. Dutxak eta komunak hor gibelean dira. Bada supermarket bat kanpinean. |
| ELIN: | Bainatu al daiteke lakuan? |
| RECEPTIONIST: | Bai, bai. Bainaz ezin da arrantza egin. Kanpineko plano bat emanen dizuet. Gaur bestak dira Bidarrain. Beharbada joan nahi duzue ... |

NAROA and ELIN: A bai? Beharbada joango gara. Eskerrik asko!
(*Outside the office.*)

ELIN: Zer iruditzen zaizu leku hori denda jartzeko?
NAROA: Ondo. Has gaitezen denda montatzen.
ELIN: Nik uste dut lakuan bainatu egingo naizela.
NAROA: Egia esateko, ideia ona da. Zurekin joango naiz eta gerokoak gero.

Notes

bestaldekoa from the other side (= *beste aldekoa; here, from the 'Spanish' side*)

karnet identification card, membership card (*also driving licence*)

Mila esker! Thank you! (*lit. 'a thousand thanks'*)

bainatu al daiteke? *impersonal*: can one swim?

has gaitezen let's start

bainatu egingo naizela that I'm going to have a swim (*bainatuko naizela is also possible*)

Gerokoak gero. (*roughly*) We'll worry about the rest later.

Doing things with words

'Let's' / plans and proposals

Study these sentences:

Joan gaitezen Baigorrira. Let's go to Baigorri.

Galdetu dezagun hemen. Let's ask here.

Goazen beste toki batera. Let's go somewhere else.

To say 'Let's (do something)', we can place **gaitezen** (with intransitive verbs) or **dezagun** (with transitives) after the verb as in the first two examples above. There is also a popular simple form for 'let's go', **goazen**, which even tends colloquially to replace **gaitezen** and **dezagun**: the main verb follows **goazen** in the -t(z)era form, e.g.

Goazen galdetzera hemen. Let's ask here.

You can also use the future tense in a question to suggest joint action, c.g.

Galdetuko al dugu hemen? Shall we ask here?

Exercise 6 Can you complete and translate the following sentences, taken from this unit's conversations, which use a variety of patterns to make suggestions and proposals?

- 1 _____ motxilak eta denda kotxearen maleteroan?
- 2 _____ laguntzea?
- 3 _____ ? Autopistaz ala errepidetik?
- 4 _____ orain hobe dela autopista hartza.
- 5 _____ joaten barne alderat.
- 6 Orduan, _____ Baigorri.
- 7 Toki polit bat bilatzea eta bertan baziaketa _____.
- 8 Gaur bestak dira Bidarain. _____ joan _____.
- 9 Zer _____ leku hori denda jartzeko?
- 10 _____ lakuan bainatu egingo naizela.

Getting permission, and prohibitions

Study these sentences:

Bainatu al daiteke lakuan?	{	Can one swim in the lake? Yes, of course. Go ahead!
Ba al dago lakuan bainatzenik?		
Bai, bai.		
Aurrera!		

Ezin da bainatu lakuan.	You/One can't swim in the lake.
Ez dago lakuan bainatzerik.	There's no bathing in the lake.
DEBEKATUTA DAGO BAINATZEA	BATHING IS FORBIDDEN
BAINATZEA DEBEKATUTA!	BATHING FORBIDDEN!
LAKUAN EZ BAINATU	NO BATHING IN THE LAKE

Expressing uncertainty or opinion

Exercise 7 What are the missing words which express uncertainty or opinion on the speaker's part in these sentences?

- 1 _____ joan nahi duzue ...
- 2 _____ kostan zaila izanen dela deus aurkitzea.
- 3 _____ lakuan bainatu egingo naizela.
- 4 _____ orain hobe dela autopista hartza mugaraino ...

Another way to express an uncertain conjecture is by using the future tense: see page 137.

Talking about . . .

Accommodation

Some useful vocabulary:

ostatu	hotel
hotel	(large) hotel
pentsio	boarding house
aterpetxe	hostel
kanpin/akanpaleku	campground
denda	tent
lo (egiteko) zaku	sleeping bag
gela	room
doble	double
erreserbatu	reserve
bete(t)a	full
hutsik	empty, vacant
gau	night
ohe	bed

Language and life

Dialects and varieties of Basque

Wherever you go in the Basque Country, you will find that people use some language forms different from those you have learnt. What is more, the person may use different language forms on different occasions. We do the same in English, of course. People will often do their best to talk to you in standard Basque because you are a foreigner, but even so you will notice differences. Since no single form of Basque is the only correct one, you are advised to adapt to and copy whatever you hear. In most cases that will not be difficult if you have learnt Basque well from this book, so don't be discouraged.

There are a few differences of pronunciation between dialects. For example, **h** is not pronounced in southern dialects (those on the 'Spanish' side). In Lapurdi and Low Navarre, **n** does not sound as **ñ** after **i**, nor does **l** sound as **ll**. The letter **j** sounds like an **h** in Gipuzkoa, a **y** in Navarre, and a **j** in Bizkaia! There are also some vowel changes, so a word like **etxeak** 'houses' may be pronounced **etxeak, etxek, etxiak, etxiek, etzik or etxyak**.

You will also encounter differences of vocabulary. Remember that most of the vocabulary you have learnt is either used everywhere or at least used in Gipuzkoa. But as you will have noticed in the dialogues, northerners may say **deus** for ‘anything’, **zendako** for ‘why’, **anitz** for ‘many’, **biziki** for ‘very’, **barnean** for ‘inside’, **mintzatu** for ‘speak’, **gibelean** for ‘behind’ and **bestak** for ‘fiestas’. Bizkaians say **emon** for ‘give’, **larregi** for ‘too much/many’ and **urten** for ‘leave, go out’, as you will see in Unit 12. If you keep your ears open when meeting Basques, you will discover other such differences.

There are also some minor grammatical differences. Did you notice that northern Basques say **emanen dut** ‘I’ll give’? Some auxiliaries also have dialect forms (not shown in the dialogues). Low Navarrese, for example, say **niz** rather than **naiz**, **zira** rather than **zara**, and **ziizte** for **zarete**. Bizkaians, on the other hand, say **naz** rather than **naiz**, **zarie** rather than **zarete**, **dot** for **dut**, **dau** for **du** and **dabe** for **dute**.

Gipuzkoan Basque is not necessarily more correct than other dialects, and it too differs from standard Basque. Some Gipuzkoans say **zergatikan** for ‘why’, **ailegatu** for ‘arrive’, **bueltatu** for ‘return’, **gertu** for ‘near’ and so on. Furthermore, not all the words you have learnt in this book are used in most dialects; for example, the word for ‘far’ in both Bizkaian and northern Basque is **urrun**. As for verb forms, those you have learnt are the standard ones, but Gipuzkoans normally say **zera** not **zara**, **zerate** not **zarete**, **det** not **dut**, and although many Gipuzkoans say **dute** some use **due**.

Exercise 8 Can you give either the standard forms or those found in this book that correspond to the forms mentioned in this section? For example:

deus ‘anything’: **ezer**
zergatikan ‘why’: **zergatik** etc.

12 Etxerantz

Going home

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- past-tense auxiliary forms
- personal direct objects

Saying what you mean

- saying which way (3)
- saying when (2)
- relative clauses
- saying why
- 'had to', 'should have', 'wanted to', 'could' etc.
- the simple past tense
- indirect commands
- 'start doing', 'try to do' etc.
- 'anything' or 'nothing'

Strategies for communication

- writing addresses

Talking about ...

- health and the body
- long-distance travel

Language and life

- festivals and fiestas

Dialogue 1

A guest pays a visit

The doorbell rings. Naroa opens the door

NAROA: Pasa aurrera. Xabier zara, ezta?

XABIER: Eta zu Naroa. Azkenean ezagutu zaitut.

(*Elin comes out of the living room.*)

ELIN: Kaixo, Xabier. Zer moduz azterketak?

XABIER: Oso ongi. Eta Iparraldean?

NAROA: Berriketan hasi baino lehen, nahi al duzue kafetxo bat prestatzea?

ELIN and XABIER: Bai, ongi.

XABIER: Azterketak bukatu nituenean, Leitzara joan nintzen egun batzuk pasatzen eta aldizkaria egitera.

ELIN: Aldizkaria?

XABIER: Bai. Duela bi urte eskualdeko aldizkaritxo bat ateratzen hasi ginен. Begira, hau da udako alea.

(*Elin takes a look.*)

ELIN: Gustatzen zait. Artikulu interesgarriak dauzka eta euskara nahiko erraza. Iruditzen zait zuen lehen harpidedun atzerritarra aurkitu duuela.

XABIER: Benetan?

ELIN: Zergatik ez? Ez nuke ikasi dudan euskara galdu nahi. Honeka praktikatu egingo nuke.

XABIER: Saiatuko gara ale interesgarriak ateratzen! Ea ba, ez duzu ezer kontatzeko bidaiaz?

ELIN: Primeran pasatu dugu. Baigorriñ egon ginен kostaldeko kanpinak beteta zeudelako.

NAROA (*from the kitchen*): Eta Bidarraiko jaiak harrapatu genituen.

XABIER: Ze suertea!

NAROA (*serving coffee*): Lehenengo gauean Iparraldeko ikastolek antolatutako jaialdi batera joan ginен.

XABIER: Nork jotzen zuen?

ELIN: Niko Etxartek. Asko gustatu zitzaidan. Jaialdian geundenean Baigorriko koadrila bat ezagutu genuen eta haietan ibili ginен. Txangoak egin, mendira igo eta hango dantzak ere ikasi genituen!

XABIER: Ez dago gaizki!

(*Later.*)

XABIER: Noiz itzuli behar duzu Londresa? Laister, ezta?

ELIN: Bai, zoritzarrez. Datorren astelehenean lanean hasi behar dut. (*Looks at Naroa.*) Ondo al zaude, Naroa?

NAROA: Egia esanda, ez naiz oso ondo aurkitzen. Eguerdian buruko min pixka bat neukan eta ...

XABIER: Aurpegi txarra duzu. Zer duzu, gripea?

NAROA: Ez! Zarauzko jaiak dira eta atzo gau pasa egin nuen.

ELIN: Esan nizun ez egiteko, azken egunetan oso lo gutxi

egiten ari gara eta. Ni ez nintzen atera eta gaur primeran nago.

NAROA: Ba gaur atera nahi baduzue, ni gabe izan beharko du; aspirina bat hartu eta ohera noa.

Notes

Eta zu Naroa. Note the ellipsis of the verb 'to be'.

berriketan hasi baino lehen before (you) start chatting

Nahi al duzue kafetxo bat prestatezea? Do you want (me) to make a cup of coffee? *but translate:* Shall I ... ?

bukatu nituenean when I finished (them)

duela bi urte two years ago

ikasi dudan euskara the Basque (that) I've learnt

Ez nuke ... galdu nahi. I wouldn't want to forget the Basque I've learnt.

praktikatu egingo nuke I'd get some practice

Saiatuko gara ... ateratzen. We'll try to publish ...

Ea ba! Well, come on!

Ez duzu ezer kontatzeko ... ? Haven't you got anything to tell ... ?

Primeran pasatu dugu. We had a great time.

beteta zeudelako because they were full

Iparraldeko ikastolek antolatutako organized by the northern 'ikastola' schools

Nork jotzen zuen? Who was playing? (*i.e. what musicians?*)

gustatu zitzaidan I liked (her/him/it)

geundenean when we were

haiekin ibili ginен we went around with them

Hango dantzak ere ikasi genituen! We even learnt the local dances!

Ondo al zaude? Are you all right?

ez naiz oso ondo aurkitzen I don't feel very well.

Zer duzu? What's the matter? What's wrong with you?

jaiak dira eta what with the fiestas

gau pasa egin nuen I stayed up all night

Esan nizun ez egiteko. I told you not to (do it).

azken egunetan for the last (few) days, of late

oso lo gutxi egiten ari gara eta because we've been getting very little sleep

ni gabe izan beharko du it will have to be without me

Aspirina bat hartu eta ohera noa. I'm going to take an aspirin and go to bed.

Saying what you mean

Saying which way (3)

In Unit 9 we saw how postpositions and adverbs like **aurrean**, **kanpoan**, **goian** etc. allow us to be specific about relative position. These postpositions end in **-an** because they refer to where something or someone is. If we change **-an** to **-ra** in these words we obtain adverbs expressing which way something or someone is going:

aurrera	forward, ahead
atzera	backwards, back
barrura	in, inside
kanpora	out, outside
gora	up
behera	down

(Note that **gora** irregularly loses the **i** that appears in **goian**.) So for example:

Segi aurrera!

Goazen barrura.

Non bizi zara? – Hemendik gora, eta eskubira.

Where do you live? – Up this way, and to the right.

Direction, however, is often expressed not by such adverbs but by the choice of a specific verb of movement. An analogy is found in English where, instead of *go in* or *come in*, we may say *enter*, or instead of *go/come down*, *descend*. The difference is that the Basque verbs corresponding to *enter*, *descend* etc. are used more often. Here are some of the most useful:

sartu	enter, go/come in
atera	exit, go/come out, leave, depart
igo	ascend, go/come up (or upstairs)
jaitsi	descend, go/come down (or downstairs)
iritsi	arrive, get (somewhere), reach
itzuli	return, go/come back
buelta eman	turn round

In English we often select a verb that expresses the manner of movement, and combine it with an adverb expressing the direction, e.g. *She ran downstairs* or *He walked back*. In Basque it is usual to do the opposite: the verb selected specifies the direction, and an adverb expresses the manner:

Korrika jaitsi zen.

Oinez itzuli zen.

Examples of such manner adverbs are:

oinez 'on foot', cf. 'walk'

kotxez 'by car', cf. 'drive'

hegazkinez 'by plane', cf. 'fly'

korrika 'running, fast', cf. 'run'

These adverbs are not used if irrelevant or superfluous, even when the verbs shown are used in English. Thus 'He ran down to the shop' could be **Korrika jaitsi zen dendara** if you want to emphasize his haste; otherwise simply **Dendara jaitsi zen** is more likely.

The most common verbs of movement are **joan** 'go' and **etorri** 'come'. The simple present of these was given in Unit 9. Another very useful verb is **ibili**, which expresses continual movement with no fixed direction and no specific manner, and so can be variously translated as 'go about, walk, drive, move, wander etc.'. It has a simple present as follows:

nabil	gabiltza
zabiltza	zabiltzate
dabil	dabiltza

Ibili has numerous idiomatic uses. Colloquially it is often used instead of **egon** to talk about someone's health, welfare or business, or the functioning of machines, e.g.

Amona gaizki dabil.

Grandmother isn't well.

Zer moduz zabiltza?

How're you doing?

Kotxea ez dabil.

The car doesn't work.

Exercise 1 Translate into Basque with the help of the accompanying notes, then check the key. (You may prefer to try the translation in reverse first, starting out from the key!)

Early in the morning Elin and Naroa departed on an excursion. They went inland towards the mountains. After a few kilometres,

they had to turn round, for they had taken a wrong turning. Further along, they stopped the car and started to walk up a hill. They continued up and up and finally reached the top. Afterwards they went back to the car and drove on. Unfortunately it started raining and so they drove back to a small village and went into the bar.

early in the morning: **goizean goiz**

departed: **abiatu dira** (*assuming this happened today*)

on an excursion: *say* ‘to make an excursion’

after a few kilometres: ‘after doing a few . . . ’

a wrong turning: **bide okerra**

started to walk up: **igotzen hasi dira**

hill: **mendixka**

continue up and up: **gora eta gora egin**

top: **tontor**

drive back: **atzera itzuli**

small village: **herrixka**

went: *omit the auxiliary*

Saying when (2)

Study these expressions:

(a)

datorren astean	<i>next week</i>
joan den igandean	<i>last Sunday</i>
bost minutu barru	<i>in five minutes' time</i>
duela bi urte	<i>two years ago</i>
urtero	<i>every year</i>
egunero	<i>every day</i>
uda batez	<i>for a summer</i>

(b)

iritsi nintzenean	<i>when I arrived</i>
azterketak bukatu nituenean	<i>when I finished (my) exams</i>
denbora aurkitzen dudanean	<i>when I find time</i>
ahal duzunean	<i>when you can</i>

(c)

berriketan hasi <i>baino lehen</i>	<i>before (you/we) start chatting</i>
kafea hoztu <i>baino lehen</i>	<i>before (your) coffee gets cold</i>
azterketak bukatu <i>ondoren/ eta gero</i>	<i>after (I/you/ . . .) finish (my/ . . .) exams</i>

Exercise 2 Translate into Basque, then compare with the dialogue.

- 1 When we were at the festival, we met a ‘koadrila’ from Baigorri.
- 2 Before you start chatting, shall I make some coffee?
- 3 Two years ago we started publishing a little magazine.
- 4 When I had finished my exams, I went back to Leitza.

Relative clauses

Study these sentences:

ikasi dudan euskara

the Basque that I have learnt

ikastolek antolatutako jaialdi bat

*a festival organized by the
'ikastola' schools*

Relative clauses may be finite, like the first example, or built around a participle, as in the second example. In either case, the relative clause precedes the ‘head’ (the word it qualifies) in Basque, whereas in English it follows it.

Note that **datorren astean** ‘next week’ is literally ‘in the week that is coming’; **datorren** is a relative clause. Likewise, **joan den igandean** ‘last Sunday’ is literally ‘on the Sunday that has gone’.

To form a finite relative clause, place the verb at the end of the clause and add the same -(e)n suffix used in indirect questions (see Unit 10). So:

Denda honetan erosi duzun liburua interesgarria da.

The book that you have bought in this shop is interesting.

The head noun may be omitted and the article added direct to the end of the relative clause itself, thus:

Denda honetan erosi duzuna interesgarria da.

The one that you have bought in this shop is interesting.

Participial relative clauses are formed by adding **-tako** or **-dako** to the participle, that is, the **-ta/-da** form of the participle seen in Unit 11 plus the adjective-forming **-ko**. Thus the second example above is literally ‘an ikastolas-organized festival’.

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Past-tense auxiliary forms

Study these sentences:

Hango dantzak ikasi genituen. We learnt the local dances.
Esan nizun ez egiteko. I told you not to do (it).

There is a past-tense auxiliary form corresponding to every present-tense form, but don't try to learn them all at once! If you have learnt the most important forms, given in Unit 10, then the others will come easier as these mostly follow similar principles. Here is a selection of some of them:

zitzaidan	was to me
zitzaitzun	was to you
zitzaison	was to her/him/it
zitzaien	was to them
zitzaitzktion	were to her/him/it
nion	I (it) to her/him
zenion	you (it) to her/him
zion	she/he (it) to her/him
zioten	they (it) to her/him
zenidan	you (it) to me
zidan	she/he (it) to me
zidaten	they (it) to me
nizun	I (it) to you
zizun	she/he (it) to you
zizuten	they (it) to you
nien	I (it) to them
nizkion	I (them) to her/him
zizkidan	they (them) to me

Exercise 3 Can you say which present-tense auxiliary form corresponds to each of the above past-tense forms?

Talking about . . .

Health and the body

Here is some useful vocabulary; see also pages 109–10 for names of shopping items related to health and personal hygiene.

missing page

- ELIN: Bai. Kezkatuta nengoen.
- NAROA: Goazen kafetxo bat hartzera.
- ELIN: Motxila fakturatu behar da. Hori egingo dut kafea hartu baino lehen. Non utziko nituen pasaportea eta hegazkin txartela?
- NAROA: Tabernan egongo naiz zure zain.
(*At the check-in desk.*)
- CLERK: Emon pasaportea eta txartela, mesedes. Erretzailea ala ez erretzailea?
- ELIN: Ez erretzailea.
- CLERK: Ipini motxila zintan, mesedes. Zuk zeuk egin duzu motxila?
- ELIN: Bai.
- CLERK: Larregi pisatzen du
(*Three minutes later.*)
- CLERK: Zeure hegaldia deitzen dutenean, urten bigarren atetik.
(*In the airport coffee lounge.*)
- NAROA: Zer, arazorik?
- ELIN: Ordaindu behar izan dut pisu gehiegi neukalako. Hainbeste oparirekin ... !
- NAROA: Hartu kafea hoztu baino lehen.
- ELIN: Etorkiko zara abenduan Gabonak gurekin pasatzera, ezta?
- NAROA: Ahal badut, bai.
- ELIN: Saiatu zaitez etortzen. Bangorren primeran pasatuko dugu.
- (*After a pause.*)
- NAROA: Opari txiki bat daukat zuretzat. Tori.
- ELIN: Ez zenuen ezer egin behar.
- NAROA: Gustatzen al zaizu?
- ELIN: Noski baietz. Esan nizun ez erosteko. Erosi nahi nuen baina garestiegia zen.
- LOUDSPEAKER: Londreserako BA 565 hegaldirako lehenengo deia. Bidaiaiak nazioarteko hegaldietako bigarren atera joan zaitezte, mesedes. *Primera llamada para el vuelo de British Airways número cinco seis cinco ...*
- ELIN: Bukatu dira oportak.
- (*Kissing at the departure gate.*)
- NAROA: Agur. Bidaia on bat izan.
- ELIN: Bai, agur. Gabonak arte.
- ELIN (*waving*): Agur. Idatzi, e!
- NAROA: Bai! Agur!

Notes

trafiko handia zegoen there was a lot of traffic
kezkatuta nengoen I was worried
Non utziko nituen ... ? I wonder where I left ... ?
Ipini motxila zintan. Put your bag on the conveyer belt.
zu(k) zeu(k) you yourself
ordaindu behar izan dut I had to pay
neukalako because I had
Hainbeste oparirekin ... ! All those presents! (*lit. 'With so many presents ... !'*)
ahal badut if I can, if I'm able
Saiatu zaitez etortzen. Try to come.
Ez zenuen ezer egin behar. You needn't have done anything.
Noski baietz. Of course I do.
Esan nizun ez erosteko. I told you not to buy it.

Saying what you mean

Saying why

Study these sentences:

Zergatik ikasi duzu euskara?	<i>Why did you learn Basque?</i>
Zergatik ez?!	<i>Why not?!</i>
Interesgarria delako.	<i>Because it's interesting.</i>
Goazen aldatzera, gauean afaltzera goaz eta.	<i>Let's go and change, since we're going out to eat later.</i>

To say 'because', the suffix **-(e)lako** is added to the verb: **interesgarria da** 'it is interesting', **interesgarria delako** 'because it is interesting'; **etorri naiz** 'I have come', **etorri naizelako** 'because I have come'. This suffix has the same form as the **-(e)la** used in indirect statements (see Unit 6) plus **-ko**.

Alternatively, explanatory clauses may be signalled by **eta** placed at the end of the clause.

Exercise 4 Answer these questions:

- 1 Zergatik joan zen Xabier Leitzara?
- 2 Zergatik uste duzu Elini gustatu zaiola Xabierren aldizkaria?
- 3 Zergatik itzuli behar du Elinek laister Londresa?

-
- 4 Zergatik dauka Naroak buruko mina?
 5 Zergatik zegoen Elin kezkatuta aireportura iritsi baino lehen?
 6 Zergatik ordaindu behar izan du Elinek maleta fakturatze-rakoan?

'Had to', 'should have', 'wanted to', 'could' etc.

Study these sentences:

Erosi nahi nuen, baina garestiegia zen.	I wanted to buy it, but it was too expensive.
Zer egin behar zuen Josuk?	What did Josu have to do?
Ez zenuen ezer erosi behar.	You shouldn't have bought anything.
Ezin nuen aurkitu giltza.	I couldn't find the key.
Ordaindu behar izan dut/nuen.	I had to pay.
Ezin izan ginen kostaldean gelditu.	We weren't able to stay on the coast.
Euskara pixka bat ikasi ahal izan dut.	I have been able to learn a little Basque.

The Basque verbs meaning 'have to', 'want to', 'can' etc. have both simple past tense and perfect tenses. The former are formed by using past-tense auxiliaries instead of present-tense ones: **nahi dut** 'I want', **nahi nuen** 'I wanted', **behar duzu** 'you have to', **behar zenuen** 'you had to' and so on. These can be described as expressing what one was wanting to do, having to do and so on.

The perfect forms come closer to describing something that happened; for example, **ordaindu behar izan dut** means 'I had to pay (and so I paid)', as opposed to **ordaindu behar nuen** which could mean 'I had to pay (each time I did that)' or '(if I wanted to do that) I had to pay', where we are not referring to an actual act of paying that took place. If the act did take place, use the present perfect for today and the past perfect (e.g. **ordaindu behar izan nuen**) for an earlier time of occurrence.

The simple past tense

Study these sentences:

Trafiko asko zegoen.	There was a lot of traffic.
Kanpinak beteta zeuden.	The campsites were full.
Kezkatuta nengoen.	I was worried.
Pisu gehiegi neukan.	I had too much weight.

A similar distinction is involved in choosing how to translate the past tense of ‘to be’ and ‘to have’. You already know the simple past-tense forms of **izan** (‘be’ and ‘have’) from Unit 10; these are the same as the past perfect auxiliaries. The simple past of **egon** and **eduki** need not be memorized at this point, but for your reference it is as follows:

Egon

nengoen	I was
zeunden	you were
zegoen	she/he/it was
geunden	we were
zeundeten	you (pl.) were
zeuden	they were

Eduki

neukan	I had	+ SG. <i>OBJ.</i>	neuzkan	I had	} + PL. etc.
zeneukan	you had				
zeukan	she/he/it had				
geneukan	we had				
zencukaten	you (pl.) had				
zeukaten	they had				

But when referring to a single, well-defined occurrence, the present or past perfect tense may be the appropriate one, e.g.

Ideia bat eduki nuen.

I had an idea.

Behin Ameriketan egon nintzen.

I was in America once.

Another verb whose simple past tense you may find useful is **jakin** ‘know’; it is as follows:

Jakin

nekien	I knew
zenkien	you knew
zekien	she/he knew
genekien	we knew
zenekiten	you (pl.) knew
zekiten	they knew

Indirect commands

Study these sentences:

Esan diot Xabierri bihar etortzeko. I told Xabier to come tomorrow.

Esan nizun ez erosteko. I told you not to buy it.

To express indirect commands, use the -t(z)eko form of the verb just as we would use the infinitive with *to* in English.

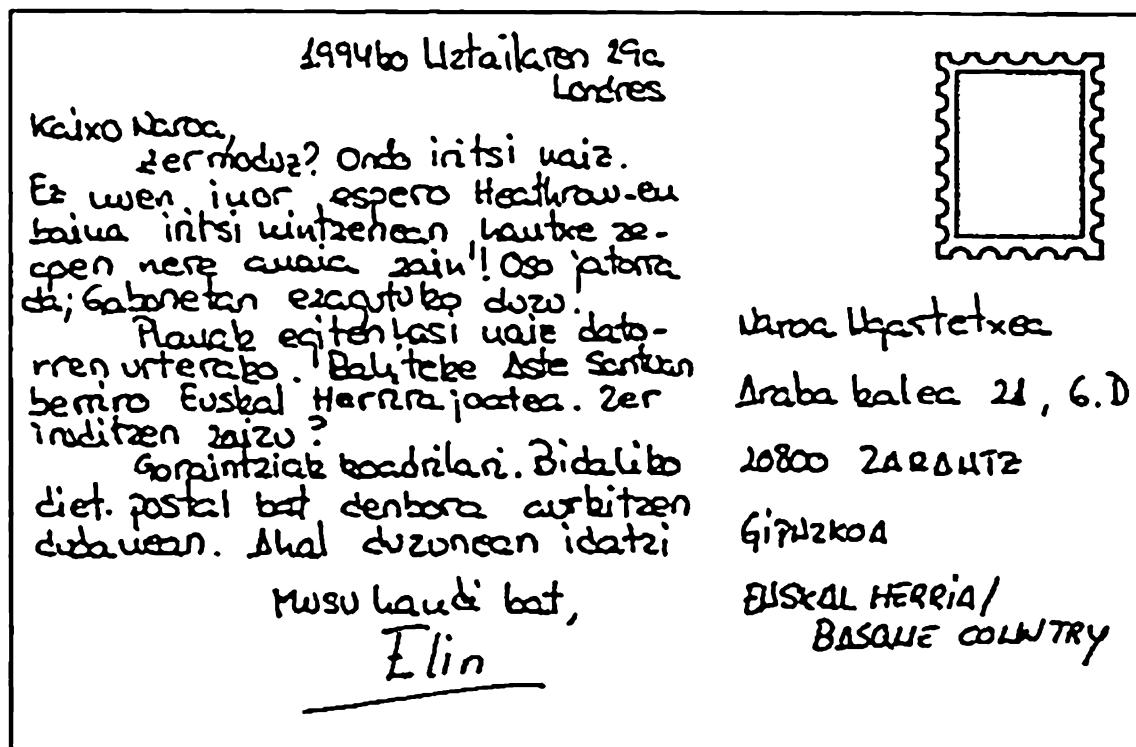
Talking about . . .

Long-distance travel

Some vocabulary concerning local travel was given in Unit 2. The following words are useful for longer journeys:

hegazkin/abioi	plane
aireportu	airport
maletak fakturatu	check luggage in
txartel/bilete	ticket
pasaporte	passport
hegaldi	flight
ate	gate
bidaiaiari	passenger
turista	tourist
maleta	suitcase
motxila	backpack
poltsa	bag
pisu	weight
erretzaile	smoker
ez erretzaile	non-smoker
eserleku	seat
pasilo	passage
leiho	window
azafata	steward(ess)
atera	leave
iritsi	arrive
bidai agentzia	travel agency
informazio	information

A postcard



Notes

Ez nuen inor espero.

I didn't expect anyone.

Baliteke ... Euskal Herria joatea.

Maybe I'll go to the Basque Country ...

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Personal direct objects

Study this sentence:

Azkenean ezagutu zaitut. At last I've met you.

As you know, a transitive verb agrees in number with its direct object:

Zure lagunak ezagutzen ditut. I know your friends.

When no object noun phrase is present, we must insert 'her', 'him', 'it' or 'them' into the English translation:

Ezagutzen ditut.

I know them.

Such verbs must also agree with their object in person, and since the object pronoun will normally be omitted in Basque, the appropriate one must be inserted in English. Knowledge of the full paradigm will come gradually if you persevere with your Basque; here are some sample forms:

nauzu	you ... me
nau	she/he/it ... me
naute	they ... me
zaitut	I ... you
zaitu	she/he/it ... you
zaituzte	they ... you
gaituzu	you ... us

Exercise 5 Which of the sentences on the right do you think means the following?

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| 1 I love you? | (a) ikusi gaituzu |
| 2 you love me? | (b) ezagutzen naute |
| 3 you saw us? | (c) maite zaitut |
| 4 we saw you? | (d) ikusi zaitugu |
| 5 they know me? | (e) ezagutzen dituzu |
| 6 you know them? | (f) maite nauzu |

Saying what you mean

'Start doing', 'try to do' etc.

Study these sentences:

Planak egiten hasi naiz datorren urterako.

I've started making plans for next year.

Naroa saiatuko da Bangorrera joaten Gabonetan.

Naroa will try to go to Bangor at Christmas.

Note that the main verbs in these sentences take a subordinate verb in the **-t(z)en** form, i.e. the same form used in the compound present tense. The list of verbs governing **-t(z)en** includes:

hasi	start to, begin to
jarraitu/segi	continue
saiatu	try to

jakin	know how to
ikasi	learn to
irakatsi	teach to
lagundu	help to
utzi	let

The **-t(z)en** form of verbs also occurs with auxiliaries like **ari izan** (see Unit 5) and with verbs of perception, e.g.

Elin euskara asko ikasten ari da.

Euskaraz hitzegiten entzun zaitut. I heard you speaking Basque.

'Anything' or 'nothing'

Study these sentences:

Ez zenuen ezer erosi behar.

You shouldn't have bought anything.

Ez nuen inor espero aireportuan.

I wasn't expecting anyone at the airport.

The words **ezer** 'anything' and **inor** 'anyone' are used in negative sentences like the above, and can also occur in some questions and other sentence types, e.g.

Inor ikusten al duzu? Can (Do) you see anyone?

Other words used in the same kinds of sentence include **inoiz** 'ever' and noun phrases with the partitive suffix **-(r)ik** (see Unit 7).

The word **batere** (which is compounded from **bat** and **ere** and which, in colloquial speech, may take the forms **bate** or **bape**) has two meanings, 'any' and 'at all':

Zenbat anai-arreba dituzu? – Batere ez.

How many brothers and sisters have you? – None (not any).

Ez nago batere nekatuta.

I'm not tired at all.

There are no negative words in Basque corresponding to 'nothing', 'nobody', 'none' and so on; instead, words meaning 'anything', 'anybody', 'any' and the like must be placed in a negative context:

Ez daukat dirurik. I have no money = I haven't any money.

Ideiarik ez. No idea = Not any idea.

Inor ez zen etorri. Nobody came = Anybody didn't come

Ezer ez. Nothing = Not anything.

Strategies for communication

Writing addresses

Look again at the address on Elin's postcard to Naroa. In Spain, hence also in the southern Basque Country, the street name precedes the door number:

Araba kalea 21

Most Basques live in flats, and these are usually identified by a floor number and a flat number or letter (or sometimes *ezker* 'left', *eskuin* 'right'); Naroa lives in flat D on the sixth floor. Her address would be read:

Araba kalea hogeita bat, seigarrena de.

The town's name, on the next line, is preceded by a five-digit postal code.

Exercise 6 (review) Translate:

- 1 We weren't able to speak to anyone.
- 2 Up on the hill we couldn't see anything, as there was a lot of mist. What should we have done?
- 3 You see, I was able to come.
- 4 How much money should I give him next week? – None.
- 5 You shouldn't have drunk so much.
- 6 Have you learnt anything with this book?

Language and life

Festivals and fiestas

Basques love social gatherings and excuses to, as they say, *kalera atera* and *kalean ibili*. As these terms imply, the streets and plazas of a town, rather than private homes, are considered the best place for socializing, especially when there is *giroa* ('atmosphere'). This occurs on Friday and Saturday nights, and especially when there are popular musical events (*kontzertuak* and *kantaldiak*), *ad hoc* festivals or fund-raising events (*jaialdiak*), or other 'happenings'.

Jaiak (or *festak* or *bestak*) usually refer to annual celebrations, mostly traditional. The majority of these are peculiar to a particular village or town; these are the *herriko jaiak* or (to use the

Spanish word) *fiestas*. They generally commemorate a saint whose name they take, and most of the popular ones take place in the summer months. Their names are plural nouns: **San Ferminak**, **San Juanak**, **San Martinak** etc.

In large towns the *jaiak* last a full week; in small towns, two to three days. They have an official programme, announced in printed leaflets or on posters placed in bars and public places. There may be a special children's day, a seniors' day and so on. Programmed events taking place in the streets from dawn to dusk and beyond include traditional sports events – such as handball, chopping logs, weight-lifting and tug-of-war – processions, street bands, **bertsolariak**, children's games, various types of concerts, contests and so on. There are also religious services. But most important of all is the *giroa*, the joyful gathering of people of all ages and whole families with all their noise, their gaiety and, they would no doubt feel, their Basqueness (**euskalduntasuna**).

There is a rich *jaiak*-related vocabulary, including:

meza	mass
txistulariak	txistu players
dultzaineroak	dultzaina players
trikitilariak	trikitixa players
kalejira	parade
txaranga	brass band
buruhandiak, erraldoiak	'big-heads' and 'giants'
pilota	handball
pilotariak	handball players
haizkolariak	log choppers
harrijasotzaileak	weight lifters
sokatira	tug-of-war
(haur) jolasak	(children's) games
bertsolariak	verse improvisers
suziriak or suak	fireworks
txapelketa	contest, competition
bazkari herrikoi	collective meal
txozna	stall (selling drinks, snacks etc.)

Appendix

A short guide to word order

In Basque sentences it is common for the subject (if mentioned) to come first, and the verb to be placed last:

Hau Donostiako autobusa da.**** This is the San Sebastian bus.
Hemen daude. (They) are here.

However, this is only a tendency, not a hard-and-fast rule; the order of elements in the sentence is more flexible than in English. But word order is not arbitrary. It is often determined by aspects of discourse such as focus, topic or other forms of emphasis, which play only a minor role in English grammar.

There are a few fairly strict rules that you should observe, so let us list them:

Rule 1: Question words/expressions immediately precede the verb.

Some examples:

- Non dago autobusa? or Autobusa non dago?**
Where is the bus?
(not, for example, ‘Non autobusa dago?’).
- Zenbat etxe desberdinetan bizi izan zara aurten?**
How many different houses have you lived in this year?
(zenbat etxe desberdinetan is an interrogative expression and bizi izan zara is the verb).

Rule 2: A negated verb (i.e. one immediately preceded by **ez**) generally precedes other sentence elements, particularly objects.

Some examples:

- | | |
|--|--|
| Ez dakit zure izena. | I don't know your name. |
| Ez daukate kafe onik taberna honetan. | They don't have good coffee in this bar. |

However, the subject often comes first, e.g.

Autobusa ez dago hemen. The bus isn't here.

Rule 2a: If the verb form is compound, Rule 2 applies to the finite part (the auxiliary), which precedes the rest of the verb. The latter may optionally be placed later in the sentence.

Some examples:

Ez dut zure anaia ikusi or Ez dut ikusi zure anaia.
I haven't seen your brother.

Ez dute kaferik ematen taberna honetan.
They don't serve coffee in this bar.

Nik ez dut hori nahi.
I don't want that.

Autobusa ez da ibiltzen igandeetan.
The bus doesn't run on Sundays.

Never say, for example, '**ikusi ez dut**'.

Rule 2b: Rules 2 and 2a allow of exceptions in subordinate clauses.

Some examples:

ez badakizu izena or izena ez badakizu
if you don't know the name

ikusi ez dudan anaia
the brother (whom) I haven't seen

But the details of this sub-rule are too complex to cover here.

missing page

I'd like some *coffee*.
 This coffee is *good*.
 Who came? – *John* came.
 Michael comes from *Ireland*.
 He's going home at *Easter*.

But focus often varies according to discourse context and/or speaker intention; now contrast the following:

Does anyone want coffee? – *I'd* like some coffee.
 What are Michael's plans for Easter? – He's going *home* at Easter.

Simplified, the Basque focus rule is basically as follows:

Focus rule: The focused element immediately precedes the verb.

Thus:

Kafe hau ona da.
Kafea nahi nuke.
Nor etorri zen? – Jon etorri zen.
Mikel Irlandakoa da.
Aste Santuan joango da etxera.

but also:

Inork nahi du kafea? – Nik nahi dut/nuke kafea.
Zein dira Mikelen asmoak Aste Santurako? – Aste Santuan etxera doa.

Sometimes there is no focused argument and the verb predicate is the most salient (or only) sentence element. In this case, if the verb form is simple and affirmative it is preceded by 'affirmative ba-'; see also Rule 3 above. Compare:

Mikel Irlandara doa.	Michael's going to Ireland.
Mikel badoa.	Michael's going/leaving.

The topic of a sentence is whatever (or whoever) we are talking about; it may be almost any part of the sentence. Most often the topic is the subject. Thus (topics in square brackets):

[This coffee] is good.
 [Michael] comes from Ireland.

Sometimes, though, another part of the sentence is highlighted as topic, e.g.

- [At Easter] Michael is going home.
- [Coffee] I don't want.

Topic rule: In Basque the topic comes first in the sentence.

Some examples:

- [Kafe hau] ona da.
- [Mikel] Irlandakoa da.
- [Aste Santuan] Mikel etxera doa.
- [Kaferik] ez dut nahi.

Note that in the last example the Topic rule overrides Rule 2a, according to which the direct object **kaferik** would follow the negated verb **ez dut**. This is a marked (emphatic) construction, similar to *Coffee I don't want* in English.

The case system

The Basque cases (the endings that indicate functions or relationships, often equivalent to English prepositions) are explained in the course of the book, but it may be useful to have a synoptic list of them for general reference.

Case	Common suffix forms	Common translations	Main functions	See Unit
Absolutive	-, -a, -ak	-	citation, subject (of intransitive verbs), direct object	2
Ergative	-k, -ek, -ak	-	subject (of transitive verbs)	2, 7
Dative	-i, -ri, -ari, -ei	'to', 'for'	recipient, indirect object	6

<i>Case</i>	<i>Common suffix forms</i>	<i>Common translations</i>	<i>Main functions</i>	<i>See Unit</i>
Possessive genitive	-en, -ren, -aren (-re for personal pronouns)	'of', 's'	possession, genitive relations, with postpositions	8, 9
Comitative	-ekin, -rekin, -arekin	'with'	accompaniment, means	5, 6
Benefactive	-entzat, -rentzat, -arentzat (-retzat for personal pronouns)	'for'	recipient or beneficiary	9
-	-gatik, -agatik, -arengatik, -engatik (-regatik for personal pronouns)	'for', 'because of'	reason, price etc.	9
Instrumental	-z, -ez, -az, -taz, -etaz	'by', 'with', 'about'	instrument, means, subject matter, etc.	9, 11
Inessive	-n, -en, -an, -ean, -tan, -etan	'in', 'on', 'at'	place where, time when	1, 2, 8, 12
Allative	-a, -ra, -era, -tara, -etara	'to'	place to which	1, 8
-	-antz, -rantz, -erantz, -tarantz, -etarantz	'towards'	direction	11
-	-aino, -raino,	'as far as',	how far	11

<i>Case</i>	<i>Common suffix forms</i>	<i>Common translations</i>	<i>Main functions</i>	<i>See Unit</i>
	-eraino, -taraino, -etaraino	'up to'		
-	-ako, -rako, -erako, -tarako, -etarako	'for' 'for'	destination, purpose	9
Ablative	-tik, -dik, -etik, -tatik, -etatik	'from', 'through'	place from/ through which	1, 8, 11
Local genitive	-ko, -go, -eko, -tako, -etako	'of', 'from'	genitive relation, origin	1, 8
Partitive	-ik, -rik	-	(various functions)	7

See also 'Singular and plural nouns' (Unit 4), 'Adjectival -ko' (Unit 7), and 'The infix -ta-' (Unit 9).

The tense system

Linguists often claim that the system of the Basque verb is highly complex. None the less, if you have worked through this book you have no doubt found that practical mastery of the essential verb forms is within easy reach. Here is a reference list of the forms that have been studied in the units, which are sufficient for the purposes of a beginner (and fewer than the number of verb forms required in a comparable course for many other European languages!).

Simple tenses and auxiliaries

Present of **izan** 'be': **naiz**, **zara**, **da** (Unit 1), **gara** (Unit 3), **zarete**, **dira** (Unit 4)

with indirect objects: **zait**, **zaizu**, **zaio**, **zaigu**, **zaizue**, **zaie** (Units 5, 10)

with indirect objects and plural subject: **zaizkit**, **zaizkizu**, **zaizkio**, **zaizkigu**, **zaizkizue**, **zaizkie** (Units 5, 7, 10)

Present of **egon**: **nago**, **zaude**, **dago** (Unit 2), **gaude** (Unit 3), **zaudete**, **daude** (Unit 4)

Present of **izan** ‘have’: **dut**, **duzu**, **du** (Unit 2), **dugu** (Unit 3), **duzue**, **dute** (Unit 4)

with plural objects: **ditut**, **dituzu**, **ditu** (Unit 4), **ditugu**, **dituzue**, **dituzte** (Unit 5; also Unit 7)

with third-person-singular indirect objects: **diot**, **diozu**, **dio**, **diogu**, **diozue**, **diote** (Unit 5)

with third-person-plural indirect objects: **diet**, **diezu**, **die**, **diegu**, **diezue**, **diete** (Units 5, 7)

with indirect objects and plural direct objects: **dizkiot** etc. (Unit 11)

with non-third-person indirect objects: **didazu**, **dizut** etc. (Unit 11)

with non-third-person direct objects: **nauzu**, **zaitut** etc. (Unit 12)

Present of **eduki**: **daukat**, **daukazu**, **dauka**, **daukagu**, **daukazue**, **daukate** (Unit 5)

with plural objects: **dauzkat**, **dauzkazu**, **dauzka**, **dauzkagu**, **dauzkazue**, **dauzkate** (Units 5, 7)

Present simple of **etorri**: **nator**, **zatoz**, **dator**, **gatoz**, **zatozte**, **datoz** (Unit 9)

Present simple of **joan**: **noa**, **zoaz**, **doa**, **goaz**, **zoazte**, **doaz** (Unit 9)

Present simple of **jakin**: **dakit**, **dakizu**, **daki**, **dakigu**, **dakizue**, **dakite** (Unit 9)

Present potential auxiliary (intransitive): **naiteke**, **zaitezke**, **daiteke**, **gaitezke**, **zaitezkete**, **daitezke** (Unit 10)

Present potential auxiliary (transitive): **dezaket**, **dezakezu**, **dezake**, **dezakegu**, **dezakezue**, **dezakete** (Unit 10)

with plural objects: **ditzaket** etc. (Unit 10)

Past of **izan** ‘be’: **nintzen**, **zinen**, **zen**, **ginen**, **zineten**, **ziren** (Unit 10)

with indirect objects: **zitzaidan**, **zitzaizun**, **zitzaion**, **zitzaigun**, **zitzaizuen**, **zitzaien** (Unit 12)

Past of **izan** ‘have’: **nuen**, **zenuen**, **zuen**, **genuen**, **zenuten**, **zuten** (Unit 10)

with plural objects: **nituen**, **zenituen**, **zituen**, **genituen**, **zenituzten**, **zituzten** (Unit 10)

with indirect objects: **nion**, **zidan** etc. (Unit 12)

Conditional of **izan** ‘have’: **nuke**, **zenuke**, **luke**, **genuke**, **zenukete**, **lukete** (Unit 5)

First-person-plural imperative auxiliaries: **gaitezen, dezagun** (Unit 11)

First-person-plural imperative of **joan: goazen** (Unit 11)

Past of **egon: nengoen, zeunden, zegoen, geunden, zeundeten, zeuden** (Unit 12)

Past of **eduki: neukan, zeneukan, zeukan, geneukan, zeneukaten, zeukaten, neuzkan** etc. (Unit 12)

Compound tenses and non-finite forms

Future: **joango naiz, egingo dut** (Unit 2)

Present: **joaten naiz, egiten dut** (Unit 4), **gustatzen zait/zaizkit** (Unit 5)

Present continuous: **egiten ari naiz** (Unit 5)

(Present) perfect: **joan naiz, egin dut** (Unit 6)

Past perfect: **joan nintzen, egin nuen** (Unit 10)

Imperative (first-person plural): **joan gaitezen, egin dezagun** (Unit 11)

Basic non-finite verb forms: **joan, joango, joaten** (Unit 3)

Other non-finite forms: **-tzeko** (Units 4, 9), **-tzeria** (Unit 9), **-tzea** (Unit 11), **-tzen** (Unit 12)

Key to exercises

Unit 1

Exercise 2

Hau da Donostiako autobusa? *or* Donostiako autobusa hau da?

Exercise 3

This is the bus. This is it. *or* This is. *or* It is this (one).

Exercise 4

1 Autobusa da. 2 Zer da? 3 Non dago? 4 Han(tx) dago.
5 Badakizu? 6 Bai. 7 Donostiako autobusa da? 8 Ez. 9 A!

Exercise 14

Nafarroan / itsasaldean / autobusean / Donostiara / Zarautza /
Donostiatik / etxean / Zarautzen / trenean / Bilbotik / etxera /
lanera / Donostian / Euskal Herrian / Zarautzen

Exercise 15

1 Nongoa da Elin? *or* Elin nongoa da? 2 Bangorkoa da. 3 Bangor?
Non dago Bangor? Ameriketan? 4 Ez, ez. Bangor Gales Herrian
dago. 5 Bangorren bizi (al) da orain? 6 Ez, orain Inglaterran bizi
da. Londresen. 7 Eta non dago orain? 8 Bilbotik Donostiara doa.

Unit 2

Exercise 3

1 Zurito bat (nahi du). 2 Telebistan (lan egin nahi du). 3 Kafesne bat (nahi du). 4 Zarautza (joan nahi du).

Exercise 4

Zuk, Nik, Ni

Exercise 7

1 agur 2 ikusi arte 3 ongi pasa 4 ikusi arte

Exercise 10

1 Bilbora trenean joango naiz. 2 Elin Donostiatik Zarautza trenean joango da. 3 Euskaraz hitzegingo dut. 4 Ikusiko dugu. 5 Euskara ikasiko al duzu?

Exercise 12

1 Oporretan (al) zaude? 2 Ni ere pozik nago. 3 Naroa etxean dago orain. 4 Oso nekatuta nago.

Exercise 13

7, 3, 11, 6, 10, 4, 8, 1, 5, 9, 2

Unit 3

Exercise 2

1 Hartu nere telefonoa. 2 Erantzun laister! 3 Pasatu ikastola eta hartu lehenengo kalean eskubitara. 4 Deitu! 5 Hartu (zure) txartela.

Exercise 5

1b, 2a, 3c

Exercise 6

1 Ez naiz amerikanoa. 2 Ez dut Irlandara joan nahi. 3 Ez naiz Zarautzen bizi. 4 Ez duzu ikastolara etorri behar.

Exercise 7

1 Ezin naiz kalera atera. 2 Ezin naiz Donostiara joan. 3 Ezin dut lan egin bihar. 4 Ezin dut hitzegin orain.

Exercise 9

You: Barkatu / hemen al dago

SECRETARY: Nor zara

You: (*your name*)

SECRETARY: Itxoin

You: Bale/Ongi/Bai

Exercise 10

1b/c, 2d, 3a

Exercise 12

1 Nekatuta gaude. 2 Laister iritsiko gara. 3 Primeran pasatuko dugu.

Exercise 13

abenduaren 24a

Exercise 14

joango, joaten; egingo, egiten; hitzegingo, hitzegiten; ikusiko, ikusten; deituko, deitzen; bazkalduko, bazkaltzen

Exercise 15

A: egingo; B: joaten, joango; A: egingo; B: hitzegingo, ikusiko

Unit 4

Exercise 1

geltokia, herria, kalea, trena, hegazkina, txartela, telefonoa, lana hondartza, bidaia, problema, telebista, ama, aita semaforoak, autobusak, musuak, lagunak dendak, etxeak, besarkadak, pezetak

Exercise 2

Bilbo, Londres, Inglaterra, Gipuzkoa, Leitza
 Xabier, Naroa, Elin
 bi kafe, hiru ardo, cocacola bat, lau garagardo/zerbeza/kaña
 bost etxe, etxe bat, denda bat, hamar taberna, zenbat eliza?

Exercise 3

A: Zein hondartza da hau?
 B: Hondartza hau Ondarreta da, Donostian.
 A: Urruti al dago hori?
 B: Ez, hori ez dago oso urrutti. Hamar kilometro.

Exercise 8

1 Ekarri zure txanpon zaharrak. 2 Libra irlandesak aldatu nahi ditut. 3 Parke ederrak dira.

Exercise 11

aparkaleku, emplegu, informazio, museo, parrokia, pasagune, posta, pribatu, publiko, turismo

Exercise 12

aparkaleku, igerileku, larrialdi, udaletxe

Exercise 14

ibilgailu ‘device for moving about’ i.e. ‘vehicle’; **k**iroldegi ‘place for sports’, i.e. ‘sports centre’

Unit 5

Exercise 5

- 1 Hondartzara joan nahi al duzu orain? 2 Etxea ikusi nahi al duzu?
 3 Dutxatu nahi al duzu? 4 Lo pixka bat egin nahi al duzu?

Exercise 6

- 1 Euskal Herrian bizi nahi al zenuke datorren urtean? 2 Euskara gehiago ikasi nahi al zenuke? 3 Zerbait egin nahi al zenuke bihar?

Exercise 9

- 1 Oso pozik nago kotxearekin, noski. 2 Trena elkarrekin hartuko dugu.

Exercise 10

- 1 Telebista ikusten (ari da). 2 Lo egiten (ari da).

Exercise 11

This is your office. Here you have the bathroom. Drat! It's going to rain on Saturday. The weather is very nice today. I've got good wine at home. What a bad programme!

Unit 6

Exercise 1

- | | |
|----------|---------------------|
| You: | hor/etxean al dago? |
| SOMEONE: | jarriko da |
| You: | deituko |
| NAROA: | Bai? (Nor da?) |
| IDOIA: | arte |
| NAROA: | gero arte |

Exercise 5

- 1 Itziarri (esan dio). 2 Mikeli (emango diote). 3 Elini (gustatzen zaio).

Exercise 6

1 gustatzen zaiola. 2 Eskozian egon dela. 3 polita (omen) dela. 4 han bizi dela. 5 oso polita dela.

Unit 7

Exercise 1

1 dituzu. 2 Nahiago ditut. 3 libra aldatuko ditugu. 4 gorriak / ditugu. 5 Zarautzak taberna / dauzka. 6 gustatzen al zaizkizu. 7 Dendariak lagunduko die.

Exercise 2

1 Zenbat letxuga behar ... 2 ... ardo nahiago dituzu? 3 Hauek ... 4 Mutil horiek politak dira. 5 Zein dira mendi horiek?

Exercise 5

1 esnerik. 2 kaferik. 3 gatzik. 4 seilurik. 5 ardorik. 6 ardo beltzik. 7 tomaterik.

Exercise 7

2 Bai, baina beste hiztegi hori txikiagoa da. 3 Bai, baina beste patata horiek merkeagoak dira. 4 Bai, baina beste bideo zinta horiek hobeak dira.

Exercise 9

1 Euskarazko hiztegiak (balio du 3.000 pezeta). 2 Oskorrik (kantatzen du zintan). 3 Elinek (nahi du Oskorriren zinta berria).

Exercise 10

1 Eguzkitako krema. 2 Eguzkitako betaurrekoak. 3 Hortzetako pasta eta hortzetako zepiloa. 4 (Idazteko) papera eta boligrafoa.

Exercise 12

arraindegia, haragitegia, gozotegia, tabakoak, farmazia, liburdenda, burdindegia, aroztegia, zapategia, ileapaindegia, taberna, kafetegia, jatetxea, hotela

Exercise 13

izozkitegian; ardotegian; auto osagarrietañ; 'sukaldeak' dendaran

Unit 8

Translation of the reading:

If you go shopping in the Basque Country, you have three choices when shopping for food and so on: the small shops, the big supermarket, and the market. Each has its advantages and disadvantages.

For minor everyday shopping, it is no doubt easiest to run down to the fruit shop, butcher's and other little shops. These are found in every town and neighbourhood. In a town like Zarautz, you will find Basque-speaking shopkeepers; thus you will have good opportunities to hear and use Basque. But that is not all. If you want to enquire about food, the weather, the neighbourhood or anything else, or simply have a chat, go straight ahead! But careful! The shopkeeper will probably want to know something about your life too!

Excellent fruit and vegetables are sold in many small shops, particularly when these come direct from the owner's garden. However, prices will not be the lowest, at least compared to some supermarkets. Apart from that, if you are looking for specific brands or types of food, a broader choice will probably be offered in a large supermarket. There is furthermore the convenience of buying meat, fish, fruit, vegetables, bread and other articles in the same place.

You should go at least once to the market, even if just for a look. It is best to visit it in the morning, if you want to see it with all its colour and noise, full of housewives and sellers. Don't miss that interesting experience. Besides, it is another opportunity to hear some Basque.

A wide variety of things are sold at the market. Some stands are practically small shops. In the middle of the aisle, or on a small table, some farmers have their own vegetables for sale: lettuces,

tomatoes, carrots, potatoes and the fresh vegetables of the season. Nearby someone is selling fine local cheese(s); (s)he has walnuts too, if you want any. Over there opposite, there's fish that's really fresh. And just look at those flowers!

All the same, things at the market are not always cheaper than in the shops; it depends (*lit.* there's a bit of everything). So it's best to ask the price. Besides, that way you'll be talking Basque. If you don't know what something is called, ask!

If there are people waiting to buy, ask: 'Who's the last one?' 'I am', somebody will answer. Then remember when it's your turn (*lit.* who you are behind) and respect it.

Basques don't usually haggle (argue) over the price. If they don't agree, they will look for a cheaper one. On the other hand, they demand quality in their food. If you don't like that tomato, don't hesitate to tell the seller: 'This one is too unripe for my liking' or 'Haven't you got a riper one?'. If you do this, you will win his/her respect.

Exercise 1

1 -ren. 2 -en. 3 -ena. 4 -ena. 5 -renak. 6 -ren. 7 -en. 8 -ren. 9 -ren.
10 -ren / -en.

Exercise 2

1a: characteristic (*also possible* – 1b: place). 2b place. 3b place.
4a animate. 5b place. 6b place. 7b place. 8a animate. 9b place.
10b time.

Unit 9

Exercise 1

1 baino: Hotels are more expensive than campgrounds. 2 -ik: This is the most expensive hotel in Zarautz. 3 baino: Zarautz is much closer to Donostia than to Bilbao. 4 baino: Elin prefers chocolate ice-cream to vanilla.

Exercise 2

1 bainatzera. 2 joateko. 3 edateko. 4 joan. 5 egitera. 6 ikasteko.
7 erosteko. 8 edateko. 9 ikustera. 10 entzun.

Exercise 4

1 Eguraldiaz. *or* Eguraldiari buruz. 2 Bosniari buruz. 3 Oporrei buruz. *or* Oporretaz. 4 Kanpinez. *or* Kanpinei buruz.

Exercise 5

1 ala. 2 edo. 3 edo. 4 ala. 5 edo.

Exercise 6

1 Inglaterrako. 2 eguraldiagatik. 3 birentzat. 4 amarentzat. 5 bategatik. 6 Zertarako. 7 Norentzat / Nori. 8 minutuko. 9 Ehuneko hamarra. 10 neretzat.

Exercise 8

1 zoaz. 2 goaz. 3 daki/datorr-.

Unit 10**Exercise 1**

1 Ikusten al duzu non dagoen Ondarroa? 2 Jakin nahi nuke non dauden kanpinak eta noiz dauden irekita. 3 Nahi baduzu, esango dizut zenbat balio duen.

Exercise 2

1 It's the same to me where we go. I don't mind where we go.
2 Does it seem to you that it will rain? Do you think it will rain?
3 How many days remain to Elin to stay in the Basque Country?
Two weeks. How much longer has Elin got . . . ?

Exercise 6

zerbaiten, norbaiti, Zerbait, zerbait, nonbait, zerbait, norbaitek, noizbait, Zerbait

Translation of the reading

If you like green valleys, peaceful mountains, pleasant beaches and colourful wharfs, you'll find all these in Bizkaia's Lea-Artibai region ...

- * Inland, MARKINA-XEMEIN, servicing the surrounding rural villages. Climb Mt. Oiz or visit Arretxinaga Church and the Ubillaga-Urberoaga Baths.
- * On the coast, ONDARROA, birthplace of the famous writer Txomin Agirre and Bizkaia's principal fishing port. See the gothic-style Lady Mary Church and Likona Fort. To the east, Saturrarán Beach; to the west, the breath-taking coast road to Lekeitio.
- * LEKEITIO, fishing town and tourist resort. Saint Mary Church and Uriarte Palace. Quaint beach, island and wharf.
- * Don't forget the caves of BERRIATU, IPAZTER and AMOROTO.

This year, come to Lea-Artibai.

Unit 11

Exercise 1

1 joatea. 2 edatea. 3 erretzea. 4 egitea. 5 ikastea.

Exercise 2

1 I'll give you a book. 2 What has that woman told you? 3 Come in, I'll make you some coffee. 4 We have to buy some presents for our friends. 5 My friends brought me a dictionary. 6 My mother didn't ask me for anything but I'll take her something.

Exercise 3

1 Xabier came with me as far as the station. (Xabier accompanied me to the station.) 2 We're going the wrong way, this road doesn't lead to (go towards) the border. 3 I'll take those youngsters to (as far as) the next village. 4 Which way are you going? Over the mountain.

Exercise 4

1 -ta or -ak. 2 -ta or -a. 3 -ta or -ak. 4 -da or -a. 5 -ak.

Exercise 5

1 Nora *or* Norantz. 2 hor. 3 Nondik / Hemendik. 4 Noraino / Honaino. 5 Non / Hortik.

Exercise 6

1 Sartuko al ditut ... 2 Nahi al duzu ... 3 Nola joango gara?
 4 Iruditzen zait ... 5 Zendako ez zarete ... 6 ... joan gaitezen
 ... 7 ... proposatzen dizut. 8 Beharbada ... nahi duzue. 9 ...
 iruditzen zaizu ... 10 Nik uste dut ...

Exercise 7

1 Beharbada. 2 Uste dut. 3 Nik uste dut. 4 Iruditzen zait.

Unit 12***Exercise 1***

Goizean goiz Elin eta Naroa txango bat egitera abiatu dira. Barnealdera joan dira, mendietarantz. Kilometro batzuk egin ondoren, buelta eman behar izan dute bide okerra hartu dutelako. Aurrerago kotxea gelditu dute eta mendixka bat igotzen hasi dira. Gora eta gora egin dute eta azkenean tontorrera iritsi dira. Ondoren kotxera itzuli dira eta aurrera jarraitu dute. Zoritzarrez euria egiten hasi da eta orduan, atzera itzuli dira herrixka batera eta tabernan sartu.

Exercise 3

zait, zaizu, zaio, zaie, zaizkio; diot, diozu, dio, diote, didazu, dit, didate, dizut, dizu, dizute, diet, dizkiot, dizkit

Exercise 4

1 Egun batzu pasatu nahi zituelako eta aldizkaria egin behar zuelako. 2 Artikulu interesgarriak dituelako eta euskara erraza (duelako). 3 Astelchenean lancan hasten delako/hasi behar duelako. 4 Gau pasa egin duelako (bart parrandan ibili zelako)
 5 Trafiko handia zegoelako. 6 Pisu larregi (gehieggi) zeukanlako.

Exercise 5

1c 2f 3a 4d 5b 6e

Exercise 6

1 Ezin izan dugu/genuen inorekin hitzegin. 2 Ezin genuen ezer ikusi mendi tontorrean, laino handia zegoen eta. Zer egin behar genuen? 3 Ikusten (duzu), etorni ahal izan naiz. 4 Zenbat diru eman beharko nioke datorren astean? – Batere ez. 5 Ez zenuen hainbeste edan behar. 6 Ikasi al duzu ezer liburu honekin?

Basque–English vocabulary

The following vocabulary contains all words occurring in the dialogues and reading texts, including key inflected forms (e.g. *naiz* ‘I am’) that might cause beginners difficulty. For items that recur in more than one text, a reference to the Unit number is provided, normally indicating the first occurrence only.

Items presented in the book (in explanatory sections, topical word lists etc.) but not occurring in the dialogues or readings are not repeated here. To locate such items, refer to the subject index.

a	ah, oh (1)	aldatu	change, exchange (4)
abar: <i>see eta abar</i>			
abendu(-a)	December	alde	side, part
abiatu	set out (11)	alde zahar(-ra)	the old part of town
adina	as many/much as		
ados	in agreement, agreed (3)	aldegin	go away (3)
afaldu	have supper (9)	aldera(t)	in the direction
agertu	appear	aldizkari	magazine
agian	perhaps	ale	issue
agur	goodbye	alkatxofa	artichoke
ahal dut	I am able (12)	alokairu	rent
ahaztu	forget (10)	altu	high
ai ene	oh dear	ama	mother (1)
aita	father (1)	anaia	brother (1)
aizu	hey, I say (1)	andre or andra	lady
akanpaleku	campsite (10)	anitz	many, much
al	<i>question particle</i> (3)	antolatu	organize (6)
ala	or (4)	Antton	Anthony, man’s name
aldamenean	next to, next door (7)	aparte	apart
		Araba	<i>a province</i>
		arazo	problem

ardo	wine	atzo	yesterday (10)
argi	light	aukera	chance, choice
argitsu	bright	aupa	hi, hey
ari naiz	I'm ... -ing	aurkitu	find (7), be found
aritu	be ... -ing		(8), feel (12)
arkume	lamb	aurpegi	face
arkume txuleta	lamb chop	aurtean	in front
arrayn	fish (8)	aurterra	ahead, forward
arraynzopa	fish soup		(3)
arrantza	fishing	aurreago	further on
arrantza egin	fish, go fishing	aurten	this year (9)
arrantzale	fisherman (4), devoted to fishing (10)	auskalo	who knows?!
arratsalde	afternoon	auto	car
Arratsalde on!	Good afternoon!	autobus	bus
arrazoia daukat	I am right (6)	autopista	motorway
arreba	sister (of man)	auzo	neighbourhood
arropa	clothes	axola du	it matters
arrozesne	rice pudding	azenario	carrot
arte	until (2)	azkar	quick
artean	between, among	azken	last (8), recent
artikulu	article	azkenean	at last (3), in the end
asko	many, much	azoka	market (4)
askoz	much <i>with</i> <i>comparatives</i>	azpian	under (9)
asmatu	get it right, guess	azpiko arropa	underwear
asmo	intention	azterketa	exam (6)
aspirina	aspirin	ba	then, well (2)
aste	week (7)	ba al	<i>affirmative</i> <i>particle</i> (1), if (5, 8)
Aste Santu(-a)	Easter		introduces
asteburu	weekend		questions: see ba- and al (7)
astelehen(-a)	Monday	bada	there is, if ... is
ate	door, gate	badaezpada	just in case (5)
atera	go out (2), bring out (9)	badago	there is (4), if ... is (5)
aterki	umbrella	badakizu	see ba- and dakizu (1)
atsegin	pleasant (9)		yes (1), see ere bai
atzean	behind (8)	bai	
atzerri(-an)	abroad		
atzerritar	foreign	bai ... bai	both ... and

baietz	<i>affirmative adverb</i>	beharbada	perhaps (9)
Baigorri	<i>a town (11)</i>	beharko dut	I'll have to (3), I'll need
baina(n)	but (1)	beharko nuke	I ought to
bainatu	bathe, (go for a swim (9)	behera	down
baino	than (8)	behintzat	certainly, at least
baino lehen	before (11)	beldur	fear
bainu	swim, dip	beltz	black, red (wine)
bainu-etxe	baths	benetan	really
bainu jantzi	swimsuit	bera	he/she/it, see horixe
bainugela	bathroom		
bakarrik	only	berandu	late
bakero	jeans	beranduago	later
bakoitz(-a)	each (8)	beraz	so, therefore (3)
baldin	if	berde	green (10), unripe (7), see saltsa berde
bale	okay (7)		
balio du	costs		
baliteke	maybe (9)	berdin	same, similar
banizkio	<i>auxiliary form:</i> if I were to ... them to it	berdin zait	(11) I don't mind (4)
baratz	vegetable garden	berdura	green vegetable
barazki	vegetable (8)	bere	his, her, its (1)
barkatu	excuse me (1)	berean	in the same
barnealde	interior, inland (10)	beren	their
barru	in ... time	berezi	special (8)
barruan	inside	bero	hot (5)
barrualde	interior, inland	berrehun	two hundred
baserritar	farmer, baserri dweller	berri	new (7)
bat	one, a (2)	berriak	news
batean	in a (8)	berriketan	chatting (8)
batera	to a (10)	berriro	again (7)
batez erc	especially	berrogei	forty
batzu(-k)	some (8)	berrogeita	forty- ...
bazkaldu	have lunch	berrogeita hamar	fifty
bederatzi	nine	bertako	local
begira(-tu)	look (2, 9)	bertan	right there, see oraintxe
behar dut	I must (3), I need (7)	bertsolariaik	verse improviser
		besarkada	hug
		besta	fiesta
		bestalde(-a)	the other side

beste	other (6, 7)	bukatu	finish, end (3)
beste bat	another (7)	bulego	office (9)
bestela	otherwise (9)	buruko min	headache
bestelako	another kind of	buruz	about (9)
besterik	anything else	da	is (1)
besterik gabe	just, simply	dago	is (1)
bete	fill (11)	dagokionez	as for, as far as . . .
bete(-a, -ta)	full (8), see piper beteak		is concerned
beti	always (5)	daiteke	can, may (10)
bezala	like	dakigu	we know
bezalako	like	dakit	I know (3)
bi	two	dakizu(-e)	you know (1)
biak	both	dantza	dance
bidaia	journey (3)	dator	is coming
bidaiairi	passenger	datorren	next (7)
bidali	send	datoz	are coming
Bidarrai	a village (11)	daude	are (4)
bide	path, road (10), way (8)	dauka	has (1)
bigarren	second (9)	daukagu	we have (5)
bihar	tomorrow	daukat	I have (5)
bilatu	look for (7)	daukate	they have
Bilbo	a city (2)	daukazu(-e)	you have (5)
bilete	ticket	dauzka	has them (8)
birentzat	for two (9)	debekatu	you have them
bisitatu	visit (8)	dei	forbid
bitartean	meanwhile (5)	deitu	call
bixigu	a fish, sea bream (9)	den(-a)	call, phone (2)
bizi naiz	I live (1)	dena dela	all, everything
biziki	very	den(-ak)	anyway
bizitza	life	denbora	all, everyone
Bizkaia	a province (9)	denda	time
bizkar	back	dendari	shop (4), tent
bizkotxoa	sponge (cake)	denetatik	(10)
bost	five	denontzat	shopkeeper
buelta bat eman	go for a walk/ ride (6)	deposito	all sorts
buelta arte	until (my/your) return	desberdin	for all of us
bueno	okay, right, well	deus	(petrol) tank
		dezake	different
		dezaket	anything
			can
			I can

dezakezu	you can	duzu(-e)	you have (2)
diet	I ... to them (5)	e	hey (2)
diezu	you ... to them	ea	come on
digute	they ... to us	ebaki	cut, kind of
diot	I ... to him/ her/it	edan	coffee drink
diozu	you ... to him/ her/it	edari	drink, beverage
dira	are (5)	eder	beautiful, fine (4)
dit	... to me	Ederki!	Fine! Great!
ditu	has them (8)		Okay! (5)
ditugu	we have them (9)	edo	or (7)
ditut	I have them (4)	edozertaz	about anything have (7)
dituzte	they have them	eduki	true (5), truth
dituzu	you have them (4)	egia	(10) make, do (2), be
ditzakegu	we can ... them	egin	<i>of weather</i> (5), <i>emphasis</i>
dizkigute	they ... them to us		<i>marker</i> (9)
dizu	... to you (8)	egin(-a)	done
dizuet	I ... to you <i>pl.</i> (9)	egon	be (5)
dizut	I ... to you (10)	eguerdi(-a)	midday, lunch time
dizute	they ... to you	egun	day
doa	is going	Egun on!	Good morning! (7)
dohainik	free		everyday
Donibane Lohitzune	a town (11)	eguneroko	newspaper
Donostia	a town (1)	egunkari	weather (5)
dorre	tower, fort, mansion	eguraldi	sun
du	has (3)	eguzki	it is sunny
du izena	is called	eguzkia hartu	sunbathe
dudan	that I have	eguzkitako	suntan lotion
dudarik gabe	without a doubt	krema	
duela	ago	ehun	hundred, one hundred
dugu	we have (2)		
dut	I have (2)	ehuneko	per cent
dute	they have (5)	ekain(a)	June
dutxa	shower	ekarri	bring (4)
dutxatu	have a shower (3)	ekialde	east

eliza	church (4)	esker: <i>see mila</i>
elkarrekin	together	esker
emaidazu	give me	eskerrik asko
eman	give (5)	Eskozia
emon	give	eskualde
enbidia	envy	eskubi
endibia	endive	eskubitara
ene: <i>see ai ene</i>		esnagailu
enparantza	square	esne
entsalada	salad (5)	esparrago(-ak)
entsalada mixta	'mixed salad'	esperientzia
entzun	hear, listen	espero dut
epa	hi (3)	estalita
epel	warm (9)	
erabili	use	esterlinak
erakutsi	show	eta
eraman	take, carry (10)	Eta . . . ?
erantzun	answer	
erdian	in the middle	
ere	too, also (1)	eta abar
ere bai	also (5)	eta gero
erloju	watch, clock	etorri
erosi	buy, shop (8)	etxe
erosketak egin	go shopping, do the shopping	etxeko
eroso	comfortable, convenient	
erraz	easy (8)	etxeko kopa
erraztasun	ease, convenience	etxekoandre
erre	burn, get burnt, smoke	euri
erre(-a)	roast	euria egin
errepeide	road, highway	Europa
errespetatu	respect	Euskal Herri(-a)
errespetu-	respect	
erretzaile	smoker	
esan	say, tell (6)	euskara
eseri	sit	euskaraz
eskaini	offer	euskaraz egin
eskalope	breaded steak	ez
eskatu	ask for, demand	ezagun
		thank you (1)
		Scotland (1)
		area, region (10)
		right
		on/to the right
		alarm clock
		milk
		asparagus
		experience
		I hope, I expect
		covered,
		overcast
		(pounds) sterling
		and (1), as, since
		(6)
		What about . . . ?
		(6)
		etcetera (8)
		after (3)
		come (3)
		house, home (1)
		home-made,
		house (wine etc.)
		<i>a dessert with ice cream, fruit etc.</i>
		housewife
		rain
		rain (5)
		Europe
		the Basque Country
		Basque, Basque speaker
		Basque language
		in Basque
		speak Basque
		no (1), not (1, 3), don't (8)
		well known

ezagutu	know (6), meet (6), get to know (6)	ganbara	attic
ezaugartti	characteristic, feature	gara	we are (3)
ezberdin	different	garaiko	of the season (8)
ezer	anything (12)	garaiz	in time, on time
ezik: see izan ezik		garbi	clean
ezin	cannot (3)	garesti	expensive (7)
ezker	left	gasolina	petrol
ezkerretara	on/to the left	gasolindegitik	petrol station
ezta	right? isn't it? etc. (5)	gau	night, evening (5)
eztabaidatu	discuss, argue	gau pasa egin	stay up all night
fakturatu	check in	gaur	today (2)
falta da	is missing	gaur gauean	this evening
familia	family, relations	gauza	thing (7)
fitxa	card, form, fiche	gazta	cheese (7)
flan	caramel custard	gazte	young, young
folleto	leaflet		person
fotokopia	photocopy	gaztelu	castle
fotokopiatu	(make a) photocopy	gehiago	more (5, 6, 7)
Frantzia	France	gehiegi	too much/many
fresco	cool (5), fresh (8)	gela	room
frijitu(-a)	fried	gelditu	stay (9), be left (7), be located
fruta	fruit	gelditzen zait	(11), arrange to meet (5)
gabe	without	geltoki	I have left (7)
Gabon!	Good night!	genituen	station (3)
Gabon(-ak)	Christmas (12)	genuen	we had them
gainean	on top (of)	Gernika	we had (10)
gainera	moreover, furthermore (5)	gero	a town
gaitezen	let's (11)	gero arte	then, afterwards (1), see eta
gaizki	bad(ly)	gerorako	gero and
galdetu	ask (8)	gertu	-z gero
galdu	lose (12), miss (8)	Getaria	until later, see you later (2)
gales	Welsh	geunden	for later
Gales (Herria)	Wales	gibelean	near
		gidaliburu	<i>a village</i>
			we were
			behind
			guide(book)

ginen	we were	hamalan	fourteen
Gipuzkoa	a province	hamar	ten
goaz	we are going (9)	hamazazpi	seventeen
goazen	let's go, let's (6)	han	there (3)
gogoa daukat	I want to, I feel like . . . -ing	handi	big (2), much (12)
gogoratu	remember	handik	from/through
goian	above		there
goiz	morning	hango	of/from there (10)
gora	up		
goraintziak	(best) regards	hantxe	there (1)
gorri	red, ripe (7)	hara	(to) there
gose(-a daukat)	(I'm) hungry	haragi	meat
gotiko	gothic-style	haran	valley
goxo	delicious, nice	harantz	towards there
gripe	flu	harategi	butcher's
gu	we, us	haren	his, her, its, of that
guraso(-ak)	parents		subscriber
gure	our	harpidedun	catch
gurekin	with us (6)	harrapatu	reception
gurpil	wheel, tyre	harrera	in/on/at that
Gurutze	the Red Cross	hartan	from/through
Gorri(-a)		hartatik	that
gustatu	like (8)		take (2), have
gustatzen zait	I like (5)	hartu	(5, 6), get (11)
gustora	happily		
gutun	letter	has: see hasi	start (9)
gutxi	few, little, not many/much (9)	hasi	starter, first
gutxienez	at least	hasierako	course
guzzi(-a, -ak)	all (8)	hasteko	to begin with
guztira	altogether	hau	this (1)
haietkin	with them/those	hauek	these (7)
haietaz	about them/ those	hanetan	in/on/at these
hainbeste	so much/many	haundi: variant of handi	
haitzulo	cave	hauxe	this
haize	wind, air	hegaldia	flight
hala ere	however	hegazkin	plane (2)
hamabi	twelve	hego	wing
hamabost	fifteen	hego(alde)	south
hamaika	eleven	helatu	ice cream

heldu	hold, arrive	ideia	idea (5)
hemen	here	Idoia	woman's name
hemengo	of/from here	igande(-a)	Sunday
herri	village, town (1), country (1)	igo	go up, climb (10)
hiru	three	igual	perhaps (5)
hirurehun	three hundred	ikasi	learn, study (2)
hitz	word	ikasle	student, pupil
hitzegin	speak, talk (2)	ikastola	(Basque-medium) school (3)
hiztegi	dictionary	ikus: <i>see ikusi</i>	
hobe	better (7)	ikusgari	scenic, spectacular
hoberen(-a)	best (8)	ikusi	see (2, 3)
hobeto	better	ilun	dark
hogei	twenty	informazio	information
hogeita	twenty- ...	Inglaterra	England
hondartza	beach (1)	ingles	English (1)
honek	this	inguruau	around
honela	thus, like this (6)	inor	anyone
honetako	of/from this	interesatzen zait	I'm interested in
honetan	in/on/at this	interesgarri	interesting (8)
hor	there (4)	intxaaur	walnut
hori	that (1)	intxaurtarta	walnut cake
Hori da!	That's right!	Ipar(ralde)	north (9)
horiek	those (7)	ipini	put
horixe (bera)	just that (5)	irakasle	teacher,
horrek	that (7)	irakurni	professor (1)
horrela	like that	irekita	read
horrelako	like that, that kind of	iritsi	open
horretan	in/on/at that	iritzi	arrive (2)
horretaz	about that (9)	irteera	opinion
hortaz	so (10)	iruditzen zait	exit
hotel	hotel	iruditzen zait	it seems to me,
hotz	cold	Iruñea	I think (5)
hoztu	get cold	itsas	a town
hurrengo	next (10)	itsasalde	sea-
ia(-ia)	almost (8)	itsasertz	coast (1)
iaz	last year (7)	itsaso	seafront
ibili	go about (12), be (10)	itxoin	sea
idatzi	write (12)	Itziar	wait (3)
idazole	writer	itzuli	woman's name
			return

izan	be (5), have (10)	kafesne	coffee with milk
izan ezik	except for	kafetegi	café
izen	name (2), <i>see du</i>	kai	wharf
	<i>izena and</i>	kaixo	hello
	<i>Nola duzu</i>	kaka	shit
	<i>izena?</i>	Kaka zaharra!	Drat it!
izkina	corner	kale	street
izokin	salmon	kalitate	quality
izozki	ice cream	kamiseta	T-shirt, vest
jabe	owner	kanbio	exchange rate
jai	fiesta (6), holiday, party	Kanbo	<i>a town</i>
jaialdi	festival, concert	kanpin	campsite (9)
jaio nintzen	I was born	kanpoan	outside
jaioterrí	birthplace	kanpora	out
jaitsi	go down, descend (8), bring down (10)	kanta	song
		kaña	beer (glass of)
		karnet	identity card, driving (<i>etc.</i>) licence
jakin	know (8)		
jan	eat (3)	karta	menu
janari	food	kazetaritza	journalism
jangela	dining room	kendu	take away, turn off (light)
jantzi: see bainu			worried
jantzi		kezkatuta	kilometre
jarraitu	continue	kilometro	that's all (5)
jarri	put, come to the phone (6), set up (11)	kitto	group of friends (12)
jatetxe	restaurant (9)	kobratu	charge
jator	nice (of a person) (10)	kolore	colour
jauregi	palace	koloretsu	colourful
jende	people (8)	komisio	commission
jertse	sweater	komun	toilet (9)
jo	play (instruments)	konparatuta	compared
		konpetitibo	competitive
		kontatu	count, tell (about)
joan	go (1)		
Joseba	Joseph, man's <i>name</i> (6)	kontu	bill
Josu	Jesus, man's <i>name</i>	Kontuz!	Careful!
kafe	coffee (9)	kopa	glass, drink of liqueur, <i>see</i> etxeko kopa

kosta	coast	lore	flower
kostalde	coast (10)	lortu	achieve, obtain
kotxe	car	luze	long
krema	cream	mahai	table (8)
kutxa	bank	maiatz(-a)	May
labean	in the oven, roast	maite dut	I love
lagun	friend (1)	makailu	cod (9)
lagundu	help	maleta	suitcase
laister	soon	maletero	boot
laku	lake	mami	curds (a dessert)
lan	work	Manu	<i>a man's name</i>
lan egin	work (2)	mapa	map (10)
lanean	at work (11)	Markina-Xemein	<i>a town</i>
lanera	to work (1)	mendebalde	west
langostino	prawn	mendi	mountain, hill (10)
larregi	too much/many	mendialde	hill area
larunbat(-a)	Saturday (5)	menestra	mixed vegetables, stew
lasai	quiet, calm	merke	cheap (7)
Lasai!	Don't worry!	mesedesz	please (1)
lasai ibili	take it easy	Mikel	<i>Michael, a man's name</i>
lau	four	mila	thousand, one thousand
laurogei	eighty	mila esker	thank you (4)
laurogeita	eighty- ...	milako	thousand-peseta note
legatz	hake (9)	min	pain, ache
lehen	first (12), <i>see</i> baino lehen	mineral	mineral, <i>see ur</i>
lehenengo	first (3)	mintzatu	speak, talk
leiho	window	minutu	minute
Leitza	<i>a town</i>	mixta: see entsalada	
Lekeitio	<i>a town</i>	moduz: see Zer moduz?	
leku	place (8), room (11)	moldatu	manage
letxuga	lettuce (7)	montatu	set up, pitch (a tent)
libera	franc, <i>unit of</i> <i>currency</i>	mota	kind, type
libra	pound	motxila	backpack (10)
libre	free		
liburu	book		
lo egin	sleep (5)		
logela	bedroom		
Londres	London (1)		

motz	short	noiz	when (2)
muga	border, boundary	noizbait	some time
musika	music	nola	how (2)
musu	kiss (3)	Nola duzu	What is your name?
multil	boy, fellow, chap	izena?	what kind
Nafarroa	<i>a province</i> (1)	nolako	where (1)
nago	I am (2)	non	somewhere
nagusi	principal, main (4)	nonbait	where from
nahi adina	as much/many as I/you/we ... like	nongo	who (3)
nahi baduzu	if you like (8)	nor	where to (1)
nahi dut	I want (2)	nora	someone (8)
nahi nuen	I wanted (7)	norbait	whose, of whom
nahi nuke	I'd like (5)	noren	who (9)
nahiago dut	I prefer	nork	normally, usually
nahiko(a)	enough (7), quite (3)	normalean	of course (5)
nahiko dut	I'll want (8)	noski	I had
naiz	I am (1)	nuen	I would
Naroa	<i>woman's name</i> (1)	nuke	bread (7)
nazioarteko	international	ogi	sandwich
nekatuta	tired (2)	ogitarteko	bed (3)
nekazal	agricultural	ohe	chicken
nengoen	I was	oilasko	<i>woman's name</i>
nere	my (1)	Olatz	I have heard that
nere iritziz	in my opinion	omen	good (5)
nerea	mine (6)	on	<i>a town</i>
nerekin	with me	Ondarroa	well
neretzat	for me	ondo or ongi	Okay! Right!
neri	to me	Ondo!	(4), Great!
neukan	I had (12)	ondo nago	I am well
ni	I, me (1)	Ondo pasa!	Have a good time! (2)
nik	I (2)	Ondo segi!	Keep well!
nintzen	I was (6, 10)	ondoan	next to (9), nearby (4)
nituen	I had them (12)	ondoren	after, afterwards
nizun	I ... to you <i>past</i> (12)	ongi	well (2): uses as <i>for ondo</i>
noa	I am going	Ongi etorri!	Welcome!
		opari	present
		oporr(-ak)	holidays (1, 10)
		orain	now (1)

Orain arte!	See you in a moment!		<i>currency</i>
oraindik	still	pikatu	snack on, eat as an appetizer
oraindik ez	not yet	pilo bat	a lot, lots
oraintxe (bertan)	right now, straight away (3), just now	piper piper beteak	pepper (9) stuffed peppers
ordaindu	pay (5)	pisatu	weigh
ordea	on the contrary, but	pisu	weight (12), flat
ordu	hour, time, <i>see</i> Ze ordu da?	pixka bat plan	a little (3, 7) plan
ordua da	it's time	plano	street map
orduan	then (5)	plantxan	grilled
orrialde	page	plaza	plaza, square
oso	very (1), whole (5)	poliki	slowly
Oso ondo!	Very good! Great! Fine!	polit	pretty, nice (1)
ospetsu	famous, renowned	portu	port, harbour
paketsu	peaceful	postal	postcard
pare bat	a couple (of)	postre	dessert
parean	opposite	postu	stall, stand
parke	park	pozik	happy (1)
parranda egin	go out and have fun	praka(-k)	trousers
pasa or pasatu	pass (3), come (11), spend (12), have a ... time (3), <i>see gau pasa and Ondo pasa!</i>	praka motz(-ak)	shorts
		praktikatu	practise
		presio	(air) pressure
		prest	ready
		prestatu	prepare (5), make (food etc.)
		prezio	price (8)
		primerako	excellent (8)
		primeran	very well (12)
		Primeran!	Great! Super! (3)
		primeran pasa (tu)	have a great time (3)
pasaporte	passport (4)	probatu	try, taste
pasatu: see pasa		problema	problem
pastel	cake, fish paste (9)	proposatu	propose, suggest
patata	potato	rape	<i>a kind of fish</i>
patata frijitu(-ak)	chips	sagardo	cider
persona	person	sagartarta	apple cake
pezeta	peseta, <i>unit of</i>	saiatu	try (12)
		saldu	sell

salgai	for sale	toki	place
saltsa	sauce (9)	tomate	tomato (7)
saltsa berde	<i>a kind of sauce</i>	topatu	come across, encounter
saltsan	cooked in sauce	Tori!	Here you are!
saltzaile	salesperson, seller		(9)
samar	rather	tortila	omelette
San	Saint (<i>Spanish</i>)	trafiko	traffic
San Fermínak	<i>a fiesta</i>	tren	train (1)
sandalia	sandal	turismo	tourism
Santa	Saint (<i>Spanish</i>)	turismo bulego	tourist office (9)
Santu: <i>see Aste Santua</i>		turistikoa	touristy, for tourists
Sara	<i>a village</i>	txakolin	<i>a kind of wine</i>
sarrera	entrance	txango	excursion (11)
sartu	go in (4), put in (10)	txar	bad (7)
segi	continue, carry on (3), <i>see</i> Ondo segi!	txartel	card (11), ticket (2)
seguraski	probably (2)	txiki	small (4)
seilu	stamp	txipiroi	cuttlefish
seirehun	six hundred	txoko	corner, nook
semaforo	traffic light(s)	txokolate	chocolate
sinatu	sign (4)	txori	bird
solomo	filet mignon, pork cut	txozna	stand
	(good) luck	txukun	neat, tidy
suerte	kitchen	txuleta	bone steak (9), <i>see arkume</i>
sukalde	supermarket (8)	uda	txuleta
taberna	bar (4)	ugarte	summer (10)
tarjeta	card	ulertu	island
tarteka	intermittently	untxi	understand
taula	table, chart	ur(-a)	rabbit
telebista	television (2)	ur mineral	water (6)
telefono	telephone, telephone number (2)	urdaiazpiko	bottled water
		urtuti	ham (9)
temperatura	temperature	urte	far (3)
t'erdiaik	half past	urten	year (12)
terraza	balcony, terrace	urtero	go out
toaila	towel	uste dut	every year
		utzi	I think, I believe (10)
			leave, let

uztail(-a)	July (2)	zenbat	how much, how many (2)
Xabier	Xavier, man's name (1)	zendako	why
xerra	slice, steak	zenuen	you had (7)
-z gero	if (you/one)	zenuke	you would (5)
zabal	wide	zer	what (1)
zahar	old (4)	Zer moduz?	How are you? (2)
zaigu	is to us	zerbait	something (3), anything (7)
zail	difficult		
zain nago	I am waiting (8)	zerbitzu	service
zait	is to me (4)	zerbitzugune	service centre
zaitez(te)	<i>imperative</i> <i>auxiliary</i>	zergatik	why
zaitut	I have you	zerrenda	list
zaizkizu	are to you	zeru	sky
zaizu	is to you (8)	zeu(k): see zu zeu	
zaku	bag, sack	zeuden	were
zapatila	slipper, sneaker	zeure	your
zara	you are (1)	zinta	tape, conveyer belt
zarata	noise	zira	raincoat
Zarautz	a town	zitzaidan	was to me
zarauztar	native of Zarautz	zoaz(-te)	you are going
zarete	you <i>pl.</i> are (9)	zoragarri	fantastic, fabulous
zatoz	you are coming, come!	zoritxarrez	unfortunately (3)
zaude	you are (2)	zortzi	eight
zazpi	seven	zu	you
ze	what, which (6), what (a) ... ! (3)	zu zeu	you yourself (12)
Ze ederk!	Great!	zuen	your <i>pl.</i> (11), had (6, 10)
Ze enbidia!	Lucky you!	zuk	you (2)
Ze ondo!	Great!	zure	your
Ze ordu da?	What time is it?	zurea	yours (5)
zegoen	was (12)	surekin	with you
zein	which (4, 7), what (4), how ... ! (5)	zuretzat	for you (10)
zen	was (6, 7)	zuri	to you; white
zenbakia	number (10)	zurito	short glass of beer
		zuzenean	straight (8)

English–Basque vocabulary

Only some of the most common and useful words are given.

a	bat	at last	azkenean
a little	pixka bat	bad	txar
a lot	asko, pilo bat	badly	gaizki
about	-i buruz	bank	kutxa
above	goian	bar	taberna
abroad	atzerri(-an)	Basque Country	Euskal Herri(-a)
afraid (I'm . . .)	beldurra (daukat)	Basque language	euskara
after	ondoren, eta gero	Basque speaker	euskaldun
afternoon	arratsalde	be	izan, egon
afterwards	gero, ondoren	beach	hondartza
again	berriro	beautiful	eder
ago	duela	bed	ohe
all	guzti(-a, -ak), den(-a, -ak)	before	baino lehen
almost	ia	behind	atzean
also	ere (bai)	best	hoberen(-a)
always	beti	better	hobe, hobeto
and	eta	big	handi
another	beste (. . .) bat	bill	kontu
answer	erantzun	bird	txori
anyone	inor	black	beltz
anything	ezer	book	liburu
appear	agertu	border	muga
around	inguruan	both	biak
arrive	iritsi	boy	mutil
ask	galdetu	bread	ogi
ask for	eskatu	bring	ekarri
		bring out	atera
		burn	erre
		bus	autobus

but	baina	door	ate
buy	erosi	down	behera
café	kafetegi	drink	v. edan, n. edari
call	deitu	each	bakoitz(-a)
cannot	ezin	east	ekialde
car	kotxe	Easter	Aste Santu(-a)
card	txartel	easy	erraz
Careful!	Kontuz!	eat	jan
carry	eraman	England	Inglaterra
catch	harrapatu	English	ingles
change	aldatu	enough	nahiko(a)
charge	kobratu	especially	batez ere
cheap	merke	etcetera	eta abar
cheese	gazta	Europe	Europa
chicken	oilasko	evening	gau
chocolate	txokolate	every day	egunero
Christmas	Gabon(-ak)	every year	urtero
church	eliza	everyone	denak
clean	garbi	everything	dena
climb	igo	exam	azterketa
clothes	arropa	exchange	aldatu
coast	itsasalde, kosta	exchange rate	kanbio
coffee	kafe	excursion	txango
coffee with milk	kafesne	excuse me	barkatu
cold	hotz	expensive	garesti
colour	kolore	face	surpegi
come	etorri	family	familia
continue	jarraitu, segi	famous	ospetsu
cool	fresko	far	urruti
corner	izkina	father	aita
cost(s)	balio (du)	few	gutxi
country	herri	fiesta	jai
dance	dantza	fill	bete
dark	ilun	find	aurkitu
day	egun	finish	bukatu
delicious	goxo	first	lehenengo
dessert	postre	fish	arrain
dictionary	hiztegi	flower	lore
different	desberdin	food	janari
difficult	zail	foreign	atzerritar
dining room	jangela	forget	ahaztu
don't	ez	forward	aurrera

franc	libera	house	etxe
France	Frantzia	how	nola
free	dohainik, libre	How are you?	Zer moduz?
fresh	fresko	how much/many	zenbat
friend	lagun	hungry (I'm . . .)	gosea (daukat)
fruit	fruta	I	ni
full	beteta	I am	naiz, nago
give	eman	I am able	ahal dut
give me	emaidazu	I can't	ezin dut
go	joan	I don't know	ez dakit
go about	ibili	I don't mind	berdin zait
go down	jaitsi	I have	(ba-)daukat
go for a walk/ ride	buelta bat eman	I know	(ba-)dakit
go in	sartu	I like	gustatzen zait
go out	atera	I must	behar dut
go out and have fun	parranda egin	I need	behar dut
go shopping	erosketak egin	I prefer	nahiago dut
go up	igo	I think	uste dut
good	on	I want	nahi dut
Good afternoon!	Arratsalde on!	I was born	jaio nintzen
Good morning!	Egun on!	I'd like	nahi nuke
Good night!	Gabon!	I'm . . . -ing	ari naiz
goodbye	agur	I'm interested (in)	interesatzen zait
green	berde	ice cream	helatu, izozki
happy	pozik	if	ba-
harbour	portu, kai	if you like	nahi baduzu
have	eduki, izan	in Basque	euskaraz
headache	buruko min	in front	aurrean
hear	entzun	in the middle	erdian
hello	kaixo	information	informazio
help	lagundu	inside	barruan
her	bere	interesting	interesgarri
here	hemen	international	nazioarteko
Here you are!	Tori!	is	da, dago
high	altu	is called	du izena, deitzen
his	bere		da
holidays	oport(-ak)	know	jakin, ezagutu
hot	bero	lady	andre or andra
hotel	hotel, ostatu	last	azken
hour	ordu	late	berandu
		later	beranduago, gero

learn	ikasi	now	orain
left	ezker	number	zenbaki
life	bizitza	of course	noski
light	argi	offer	eskaini
like	<i>prep. bezala(ko), v. gustatu</i>	office	bulego
like that	horrela(ko)	okay	bale, ondo, bai
listen	entzun	old	zahar
live (I . . .)	bizi (naiz)	on top (of)	gainean
long	luze	once	behin
look	begiratu	one	bat
Look!	Begira!	only	bakarrik
look for	bilatu	open	irekita
lose	galdu	or	edo, ala
make	egin	organize	antolatu
many	asko	other	beste
map	mapa	our	gure
me	ni	out	kanpora
meat	haragi	outside	kanpoan
menu	karta	owner	jabe
milk	esne	pain	min
minute	minutu	park	parke
more	gehiago	pay	ordaindu
morning	goiz	people	jende
mother	ama	perhaps	beharbada
mountain	mendi	person	perisona
much	asko	peseta	pezeta
my	nere	petrol	gasolina
name	izen	place	toki, leku
near	gertu, hurbil	plane	hegazkin
new	berri	plaza	plaza
news	berriak	please	mesedez
newspaper	egunkari	postcard	postal
next	hurrengo,	potato	patata
	datorren	pound	libra
next to	ondoan	prepare	prestatu
nice (of a person)	jator	present	opari
night	gau	pretty	polit
no	ez	price	prezio
north	iparralde	probably	seguraski
not	ez	problem	problema
		put	ipini, jarri
		put in	sartu

quick	azkar	stay	gelditu
quiet	lasai	still	oraindik
rain	<i>n. euri, v. euri</i>	street	kale
	egin	student	ikasle
read	irakurri	suitcase	maleta
ready	prest	summer	uda
really	benetan	sun	eguzki
red	gorri	supermarket	supermerkatu
region	eskualde	table	mahai
remember	gogoratu	take	hartu, eraman
restaurant	jatetxe	take away	kendu
return	itzuli	talk	hitzegin
road	karretera, bide	teacher	irakasle
room	gela	telephone	<i>n. telefono, v.</i>
same	berdin		deitu
say	esan	television	telebista
sea	itsaso	tell	esan
second	bigarren	temperature	temperatura
see	ikusi	than	baino
sell	saldu	thank you	eskerrik asko
send	bidali	that	hori, hora
shop	denda	their	beren
short	motz	then	orduan, gero
show	erakutsi	there	hor, han
side	alde	there is	(ba-)dago
similar	berdin	these	hauek
sit	eseri	thing	gauza
sky	zeru	this	hau
sleep	lo egin	those	horiek, haiek
small	txiki	ticket	txartel, biletet
some	batzu(-k)	time	denbora
someone	norbait	tired	nekatuta
something	zerbait	today	gaur
sometime	noizbait	together	elkarrekin
somewhere	nonbait	toilet	komun
song	kanta, abesti	tomorrow	bihar
soon	laister	too much/many	gehiegi
south	hegoalde	town	herri
speak	hitzegin	train	tren
speak Basque	euskaraz egin	true	egia
special	berezi	try	saiatu
start	hasi	under	azpian

understand	ulertu	where to	nora
until	arte	which	zein
up	gora	who	nor
us	gu	whose	noren
use	erabili	why	zergatik
very	oso	wide	zabal
village	herri	wind	haize
wait	itxoin	window	leiho
watch	erloju	wine	ardo
water	ur(-a)	without	gabe
way	modu, bide	word	hitz
we	gu	work	<i>n.</i> lan, <i>v.</i> lan egin
weather	eguraldi		
week	aste	write	idatzi
weekend	asteburu	year	urte
well	ondo or ongi	yes	bai
west	mendebalde	yesterday	atzo
what	zer	yet	oraindik
what kind	nolako	you	zu, zuek
when	noiz	young	gazte
where	non	your	zure, zuen
where from	nongo		

Subject index

- a 1, 4
- 'about' 9
- accommodation 11
- addresses 12
- adjectival: -ko 7; -zko 11
- adjectives 4
- agreeing 4
- ak 4
- al 1
- 'all' 7
- alphabet 3
- 'also' 8
- alternatives 9
- 'another' 7
- any 7
- 'anything' 12
- ar 1
- ari 5
- articles: -a 1, 4; indefinite 2
- 'at' 1, 8, 9
- auxiliaries 5, *see App.*

- ba-: affirmative 5, *App.*: meaning
- 'if' 8
- banks 4
- bars 2
- basic verb forms 3
- bat 2
- 'be' 1, 2, 8, *see App.*
- beste 7
- body 12

- books 7
- buruz 9
- buying tickets 2

- 'can' 10
- 'can't' 3
- car 11
- cases *see App.*
- choices 9
- clothes 10
- colours 10
- commands 3
- comparison 7, 9
- compound tenses *see App.*
- compound words 4, 7
- conjunctions 8, 9
- continuous tense 5
- 'could' 12
- countries 1

- dates 3
- dative 6, *App.*
- days of the week 5
- demonstratives 4, 7
- describing 4
- dialects Introd., 11
- diminutives 10
- diot etc. 11
- direct object *see object*
- directions 3
- drinks 2

- eating out 9
-ela 6
 emphasizing: and linking 8;
 qualities 5; word order App.
-en *see* possessive, indirect
 questions
ere 8
 ergative 7, App.
 excessive 7
 existence 4
 festivals and fiestas 12
 focus App.
 food: restaurant 9; shopping 7
 'for' 9
 'from' 1, 8
 future 2, 9
 genitive 8
 geography Introd., 1
goazen 11
 'goodbye' 2
 'had to' 12
 'have' 5, 8, *see* App.
 'have to' 3
 health 12
 home 5
 'how' 2, 8
 'how much/many' 7
-i 6
 identification 3
 'if' 8
-ik 7, 9
 impersonal 8
 'in' 1, 8, 9
 indirect: commands 12; questions
 10; statements 6
 instrumental **-z** 9, 11
 instructions 3
 intentions 5
 introductions 6
 invitations 10
-k 2, 7
 kind 8
-ko: adjectival 7; genitive 1, 8;
 meaning 'per' 9
-la: indirect statements 6; manner
 adverbs 8
-lako: adjectivals of kind 8; reason
 12
 landmarks 3
 'let's' 11
 letters 2, 3, 12
 'like' 5
 linking 8
 local cases 1, 8, 9
 manner 8
 'may' 10
 meals 7
 media 5
 menu 9
 money 4
 months 3
 movement 3, 11, 12
 music 6, 7
-n *see* *in/on/at*, indirect questions,
 relative clauses
-nean 12
 negation 3, 12, App.
 none 7
 'nothing' 12
 numbers 2, 4
 object: personal 12; plural 5, 7
 omen 6
 'on' 1, 8, 9
 opinion 11
 'or' 9

- ordering in bars 2
 'other' 7
- palatalization 6
 participles 11
 partitive 7, 9
 passive 8
 past: auxiliaries 12; modals 12;
 perfect 10; simple 12
 paying in bars 2
 people 6
 'per cent' 9
 perfect: past 10; present 6
 permission 11
 personal information 3
 personal pronouns: possessive 1, 8;
 singular 1; 'we' 3
 place adverbs 1, 11
 plans 11
 plural: determiners 7; nouns 4;
 objects 5, 12; qualified nouns 4;
 verbs 4
 politeness 1
 position 9
 possessive 8
 postcard 12
 postpositions 9
 preference 7
 present: compound 4; continuous
 5; perfect 6; simple 12
 professions 2
 prohibitions 11
 pronunciation 1, 2
 proper names 1, 3, 4
 proposals 11
 purpose 9
- quantifiers 7
 questions 1, 2, App.
- ra 1
 relative clauses 12
- reported speech *see* indirect etc.
 restaurants 9
 -ri 6
 -rik 7, 9
- shopping 7
 'should have' 12
 signs 4, 7
 simple tenses: past 12; present 9
 singular nouns 4
 'something' 10
 speaking Basque 1
 'start doing' 12
 'still' 10
 subject, omission of 1
 superlative 7
 surprise 5
- ta 11
 -ta- 9
 -tako: genitive 8, 9; relative 12
 -tar 1
 telephone 6
 tenses App.
 'than' 9
 'there is' 4
 -tik 1
 time expressions 2, 12
 time of day 6
 'to' 1, 6, 8
 topic App.
 tourist information 10
 towns 1, 4
 transport 2; *see* travel
 travel: long distance 12; road 11
 'try to do' 12
 -txo 10
- uncertainty 11
 understand (making sure you) 3
- varieties of Basque Introd., 11

-
- verb forms *see App.*
verbal nouns 11

‘want’ 2
‘wanted’ 12
weather 5, 9
‘what about’ 9
‘what happened’ 10
‘what kind’ 8
‘what you do’ 2
‘when’ 2, 12
‘where something is’ 1
‘where you are’ 2
‘where you are from’ 1
‘where you live’ 1
‘which’ 1, 4
‘which way’ 11, 12

‘whose’ 8
‘why’ 12
wishes 5
‘with’ 5, 6
word formation 4
word order 1, *App.*
‘would like’ 5

-xe 1

‘yet’ 10

-z 9, 11
zait etc. 10
zein 7
zergatik and zertarako 9
-zko 11